TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 Before driving
   Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.

2 When driving
   Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.

3 Interior features
   Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.

4 Maintenance and care
   Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.

5 When trouble arises
   What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.

6 Vehicle specifications
   Detailed vehicle information.

7 For US owners
   Reporting safety defects for US owners

Index
   Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.
1 Before driving

1-1. Key information ........................... 22
   Keys ............................................. 22

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors .................................. 24
   Wireless remote control .............. 24
   Side doors .................................. 27
   Back door.................................... 32

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.) ............ 37
   Front seats .................................. 37
   Rear seats .................................. 40
   Driving position memory .......... 43
   Head restraints............................ 45
   Seat belts .................................. 46
   Steering wheel (manually adjustable type).......................... 53
   Steering wheel (power-adjustable type)............................ 54
   Anti-glare inside rear view mirror .................................. 55
   Outside rear view mirrors .......... 56
   Roof luggage carrier .................. 58

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof ....................... 60
   Power windows............................ 60
   Moon roof .................................. 63

1-5. Refueling .................................... 67
   Opening the fuel tank cap ......... 67

1-6. Theft deterrent system .......... 70
   Engine immobilizer system ........ 70
   Alarm ........................................... 72
   Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) .................. 75

1-7. Safety information ...................... 76
   Correct driving posture .............. 76
   SRS airbags ................................. 78
   Front passenger occupant classification system ............ 90
   Child restraint systems .............. 95
   Installing child restraints ............ 98

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures .......... 110
   Driving the vehicle ..................... 110
   Engine (ignition) switch ............. 117
   Automatic Transmission ............ 120
   Turn signal lever (type A) ........... 125
   Turn signal lever (type B) .......... 126
   Parking brake ............................ 127

2-2. Instrument cluster .......... 128
   Gauges and meters .................... 128
   Indicators and warning lights ....... 130
   Trip information display .......... 134
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

- Headlight switch (type A)........ 137
- Headlight switch (type B)........ 140
- Fog light switch (type A)........ 143
- Fog light switch (type B)........ 144
- Windshield wipers and washer (type A)......... 145
- Windshield wipers and washer (type B).......... 149
- Rear window wiper and washer (type A)......... 153
- Rear window wiper and washer (type B).......... 154
- Headlight cleaner switch........ 155

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Cruise control .................. 156
- Dynamic laser cruise control... 159
- Driving assist systems.......... 169
- Electronically modulated air suspension.......... 174

2-5. Driving information

- Off-road precautions.......... 179
- Cargo and luggage............ 184
- Vehicle load limits............ 187
- Winter driving tips........... 188
- Trailer towing................ 193
- Dinghy towing................ 203

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

- Automatic air conditioning system........................ 206
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, and windshield wiper de-icer...... 212

3-2. Using the front audio system

- Audio system type................ 213
- Using the radio.................... 215
- Using the CD player............. 222
- Playing back MP3 and WMA discs......................... 228
- Optimal use of the audio system........................... 236
- Using the steering wheel audio switches.............. 239

3-3. Using the rear audio system

- Rear seat entertainment system features.................. 241
- Using the DVD player (DVD video)....................... 247
- Using the DVD player (video CD)........................ 254
- Using the DVD player (audio CD/ CD text)............. 256
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Using the DVD player (MP3 discs) ..................................... 257
Using the video mode ................................................. 259
Changing the initial setting ......................................... 261

3-4. Using the interior lights ............................. 268
   Interior lights list.................................................. 268
   • Interior lights ................................................. 271
   • Personal lights ................................................ 272

3-5. Using the storage features .............. 273
   List of storage features................................. 273
   • Glove box.................................................. 273
   • Console boxes ............................................ 274
   • Overhead console........................................ 276
   • Cup holders............................................... 277
   • Door pockets............................................. 278

3-6. Other interior features .................. 280
   Sun visors.................................................... 280
   Vanity mirror ................................................. 281
   Clock.......................................................... 282
   Outside temperature display.............................. 283
   Multi-display light control................................. 284
   Power outlet.................................................. 285
   Seat heaters.................................................. 288
   Armrest ...................................................... 290
   Floor mat..................................................... 291
   Luggage compartment features......................... 292
   Garage door opener ....................................... 295
   Compass...................................................... 300

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care .......... 306
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior .......... 306
   Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior .......... 309

4-2. Maintenance ......................... 312
   Maintenance requirements ..................... 312
   General maintenance ............................... 314
   Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M)
   programs ................................................. 317

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance .......... 318
   Do-it-yourself service precautions ..................... 318
   Hood ....................................................... 321
   Positioning the jack ..................................... 322
   Engine compartment ..................................... 324
   Tires ....................................................... 338
   Tire inflation pressure .................................. 346
   Wheels ..................................................... 350
   Air conditioning filter .................................... 352
   Wireless remote control battery ....................... 355
   Rear seat entertainment system controller ........... 357
   Checking and replacing fuses ......................... 359
Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights) ............... 371
Light bulbs ....................................... 372

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information .......... 386
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..................................... 386
If you think something is wrong ..................................... 393
Fuel pump shut off system ...... 394
Event data recorder ................. 395

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency .............. 397
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 397
If you have a flat tire.............. 408
If the engine will not start ......... 418
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ............... 419
If you lose your keys ............... 420
If the vehicle battery is discharged .................................... 421
If your vehicle overheats ......... 424
If the vehicle becomes stuck........... 426

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications ......................... 428
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) ......................... 428
Fuel information ................................ 439
Tire information ................................ 442

6-2. Customization ....................... 453
Customizable features .............. 453

6-3. Initialization ......................... 457
Items to initialize ......................... 457

7 For US owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners ................. 460

Index

Abbreviation list ......................... 462
Alphabetical index ......................... 463
What to do if... ......................... 473
Pictorial index

Headlights (high beam) P. 137, 140

Headlights (low beam) P. 137, 140

Fog lights P. 143, 144

Turn signal lights P. 125, 126

Side marker lights P. 137, 140

Moon roof P. 63

Outside rear view mirrors P. 56

Windshield wipers P. 145, 149

Parking lights P. 137, 140

Hood P. 321

Parking lights P. 137, 140

Fog lights P. 143, 144

Headlights (low beam) P. 137, 140

Headlights (high beam) P. 137, 140
Tires
- Rotation P.338
- Replacement P.408
- Inflation pressure P.436
- Information P.442

Rear window defogger P.212
Tail lights P.137, 140
Back door P.32
Rear window wiper P.153, 154

License plate lights P.137, 140
Side marker lights P.137, 140
Turn signal lights P.125, 126
Fuel filler door P.67

Roof luggage carrier * P.58

Side doors P.27

*: If equipped
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS driver airbag</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS side airbags</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS driver knee airbag</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS front passenger airbag</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armrest</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console box *</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door pockets</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seats</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor mat</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head restraints</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power window switches</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seats</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cup holders</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console box</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Garage door opener switches P. 295
Moon roof switches * P. 63
Vanity mirrors P. 281
Sun visors P. 280
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 55
Compass P. 300

Rear seat entertainment system * P. 241
SRS curtain shield airbags P. 78

Overhead console P. 276
Personal lights P. 272
Interior lights P. 271

*: If equipped
Inside door lock button  P. 27

Driving position memory switches  * P. 43

Door lock switch  P. 27

Window lock switch  P. 60

Power window switches  P. 60
* If equipped

- Power outlet P.285
- Height select switch * P.174
- Headlight cleaner switch * P.155
- Seat heater switches * P.288
- Automatic transmission shift lever P.120
- Shift lock override button P.419
- ECT SNOW switch P.122
- Power outlet P.285
Power back door switch * P.32

Luggage compartment light P.34

*: If equipped
Pictorial index

Instrument panel

- Headlight switch P. 137, 140
- Turn signal lever P. 125, 126
- Fog light switch P. 143, 144
- Tire pressure warning select switch P. 341
- Glove box P. 273
- Power back door main switch * P. 33
- Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 145, 149
- Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 153, 154
- Engine switch P. 117
- Gauges and meters P. 128
- Audio remote control switches P. 239
- Tilt steering lock release lever * P. 53
- Tilt and telescopic steering control switch * P. 54
- Parking brake pedal P. 127
- Hood release lever P. 321
Without navigation system

- Multi-display light control button [P. 284]
- Security indicator [P. 70, 72]
- Audio system [P. 213]

With navigation system

- Multi-display
  - Trip information display [P. 134]
  - Outside temperature display [P. 283]
  - Clock [P. 282]
  - Automatic air conditioning display [P. 206]
- Air conditioning system [P. 206]
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, and windshield wiper de-icer * [P. 212]
- Trip information display control button [P. 134]
- Rear view monitor/navigation system *
- Security indicator [P. 70, 72]
- Audio system *
- Air conditioning system *
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, and windshield wiper de-icer *

*: If equipped
*: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
Pictorial index

Instrument panel

B

- Telephone switch*
- Speech command switch*
- Distance switch * P.161
- Cruise control switch P.156, 159

C

- Tire pressure warning reset switch P.339
- Height control switch * P.176
- VSC OFF switch P.170
Cup holder P.277
Easy access mode switch * P.175
Instrument panel light control knob P.129
ODO/TRIP button P.128
Power back door switch * P.32
AFS OFF switch * P.138, 141
Power outlet main switch * P.285
Fuel filler door opener P.67
Outside rear view mirror switches P.56

*: If equipped
*: Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
For your information

Main Owners Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.
Scraping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

⚠️ CAUTION

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired you ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

General precaution regarding children’s safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.
Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠️ CAUTION
This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

⚠️ NOTICE
This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Safety symbol

🚫 Throughout this manual, you will also see the symbol of a circle with a slash through it. This means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".
Before driving

1-1. Key information ............... 22
   Keys........................................... 22

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors ........... 24
   Wireless remote control ........... 24
   Side doors.................................. 27
   Back door .................................. 32

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.) ............ 37
   Front seats .................................. 37
   Rear seats .................................. 40
   Driving position memory .......... 43
   Head restraints .......................... 45
   Seat belts .................................. 46
   Steering wheel (manually adjustable type) .................. 53
   Steering wheel (power-adjustable type) .................... 54
   Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ......................... 55
   Outside rear view mirrors .......... 56
   Roof luggage carrier .................. 58

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof ...................... 60
   Power windows .......................... 60
   Moon roof .................................. 63

1-5. Refueling ......................... 67
   Opening the fuel tank cap ......... 67

1-6. Theft deterrent system ... 70
   Engine immobilizer system ....... 70
   Alarm........................................ 72
   Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) .......... 75

1-7. Safety information ............ 76
   Correct driving posture .......... 76
   SRS airbags ............................... 78
   Front passenger occupant classification system .......... 90
   Child restraint systems .......... 95
   Installing child restraints .......... 98
The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

► Vehicles with power back door system

1. Master keys
2. Valet key
3. Key number plate
4. Flat key

► Vehicles without power back door system
■ When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→ P. 273)
Carry the master key for your own use and leave the valet key only with the attendant.

■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→ P. 420)

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

● Do not subject the keys to strong shocks, expose them to high temperatures by placing them in direct sunlight, or get them wet.

● Do not expose the keys to electromagnetic materials or attach any material that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.
The wireless remote control can be used to lock/unlock the vehicle and open/close the back door from outside the vehicle.

► Vehicles with power back door

1. Locks all doors
2. Sounds alarm (→P. 72)
   Push and hold.
3. Unlocks all doors
4. Opens the windows and standard moon roof
   Push and hold.
5. Opens and closes the back door
   Push and hold.

► Vehicles without power back door

1. Locks all doors
2. Unlocks all doors
3. Opens the windows and standard moon roof
   Push and hold.
4. Sounds alarm (→P. 72)
   Push and hold.

■ 2-step unlocking function

When you push the UNLOCK button, the driver’s door is unlocked. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.
**Back door operation**

The back door can be opened even if it is locked. Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.

**Operation signals**

- **Side doors:** A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- **Back door:** A buzzer sounds twice and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the back door has been opened/closed.
- **Windows and standard moon roof:** A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and standard moon roof are operating.

**Door lock buzzer**

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

**Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.

**Battery depletion**

→ P. 355

**Customization**

Settings (e.g. door unlocking function) can be changed. (→ P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.
Certification for wireless remote control

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio-TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using a key, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

■ Key

1. Locks all doors
2. Closes the windows and standard moon roof (turn and hold)
3. Unlocks all doors
   Turning the key unlocks the driver’s door. Turning the key again unlocks the other doors.
4. Opens the windows and standard moon roof (turn and hold)

■ Wireless remote control
→ P. 24

■ Door lock switch

1. Locks all doors
2. Unlocks all doors
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

**Inside lock button**

1. Locks the door
2. Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

**Locking the front doors from the outside without a key**

The door cannot be locked if either of the front doors is open and the key is in the engine switch.

**Rear door child-protector lock**

1. The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.
### Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or cancelled:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shift position linked door locking function</td>
<td>Shifting the shift lever out of P locks all doors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift position linked door unlocking function</td>
<td>Shifting the shift lever to P unlocks all doors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed linked door locking function</td>
<td>All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s door linked door unlocking function</td>
<td>All doors are unlocked when the driver’s door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the engine switch to the LOCK position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

**STEP 1** Close all the doors and turn the engine switch to the ON position. (Perform the step 2 within 10 seconds.)

**STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to P or N, and press and hold the driver’s door lock switch (1 or 2) for approximately 5 seconds and then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows.
When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Shift lever position</th>
<th>Switch position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shift position linked door locking function</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift position linked door unlocking function</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed linked door locking function</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver’s door linked door unlocking function</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Impact detection door lock release system**
  
  In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

- **If a wrong key is used**
  
  The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

- **Customization**
  
  Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (→ P. 453) Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.
CAUTION

To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle. Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the front door while driving.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.
The back door can be opened using the back door opener. In addition, the power back door can be opened/closed using the power back door switch or wireless remote control.

■ Back door opener

Push up
Raise

■ Power back door switches (vehicles with power back door)

Instrument panel

Push the switch for 1 second to open/close.

Back door

Push the switch to close.
The back door can be opened even if it is locked. Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.

A buzzer sounds twice and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the back door has been opened/closed.

■ Wireless remote control (vehicles with power back door)
  ➔ P. 24

**Canceling the power back door system (vehicles with power back door)**

Turn off the main switch in the glove box to disable the power back door system.

1 **ON**
2 **OFF**

The back door cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

■ Luggage compartment light

The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened and the light switch is ON.

■ Back door handle

Use the back door handle when closing.
If the vehicle is equipped with a power back door, the back door automatically pulls closed in the event that the door is not properly latched when closed.

■ If the back door opener is inoperative

The back door can be opened from the inside.

1. Remove the cover.

2. Push the lever.
The power back door can be opened when
The engine switch is in the ON position, and the shift lever is in P.

Jam protection function
If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.

If the power back door does not work
The back door must be initialized. To initialize, close the back door completely by hand.

Customization
Settings (e.g. beep sound) can be changed. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Keep the back door closed while driving
If the back door is opening, the luggage will be thrown out and exhaust gases will be entered in the vehicle.

When the back door is opened while parking
The open back door hides the rear lights. Other road users must be warned of the presence of your vehicle by a warning triangle or other device.

Operating the power back door
● Check to make sure that passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught or hit when the back door is being operated.
● Careful attention is needed so as not to get your fingers trapped as the back door automatically closes when it has not been fully closed.
● Do not allow children to operate the back door. Closing the back door on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.
### CAUTION

- **Jam protection function**
  - Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
  - The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door.

### NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the back door components**
  - Do not apply any force, paint or let any other foreign matter on the damper.
  - Do not apply excessive force when the back door closer is operating.
  - Make sure there is nothing in the doorway before closing.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Front seats

1. Seat position switch
2. Seatback angle switch
3. Seat cushion (front) angle switch
4. Vertical height adjustment switch
5. Lumbar support switch

### Flattening seatback

**Before flattening seatbacks**

Slide the rear seats as far back as possible. (→P. 40)
Flattening seatbacks

**STEP 1**
Move the seat forward, raise the seat, and remove the head restraint.

After returning the seat to its original position, be certain to replace the head restraint.

**STEP 2**
Move the seatback angle control switch backward to flatten the seatback.

**STEP 3**
Push the vertical height adjustment switch downward.
Before driving

CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment
Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

■ While driving
● Do not allow passengers to ride on the flattened seat.
● Do not drive with the head restraints removed.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Rear seats

1. Seat position lever
2. Seatback angle lever

Folding down rear seatbacks

**Before folding down rear seatbacks**

Stow the rear seat belt buckles.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Use the seat belt hangers to prevent the belts from being tangled.

■ Folding down rear seatbacks

Pulling the seatback angle lever and fold them down until they lock.

When return the rear seatbacks to their original positions, unlock the seatbacks by pulling the seatback angle lever and lift them up until they lock.

■ Folding down rear center seatback only

Pulling the center seatback angle lever behind the seatback and fold it down.

When return the rear center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.
### CAUTION

**Seat adjustment**
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt. If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Be careful not to get hands or feet pinched between the rear console box and the rear seat when folding down the rear seatback.

**When returning the seatback to the upright position**
Observing the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.
- Press forward and rearward on the top of the seatback.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

### NOTICE

**Stowing the seatbelts**
The seat belts and the buckles must be stowed before you fold down the rear seatbacks.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Driving position memory (if equipped)

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver’s seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. Two different driving positions can be entered into memory.

■ Entering a position to memory
  Check that the shift lever is set in P.

  **STEP 1** Turn the engine switch to the ON position.

  **STEP 2** Adjust the driver’s seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

  **STEP 3** While pushing the SET button, push button 1 or 2 until the signal beeps.

  If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

■ Recalling the memorized position
  Check that the shift lever is set in P.

  **STEP 1** Turn the engine switch to the ON position.

  **STEP 2** Push button 1 or 2 to recall the memorized position.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

- **Retained accessory power**
  Memorized positions (except for the steering wheel positions) can be activated up to 30 seconds after the driver’s door is opened, even if the key is removed from the engine switch.

- **If any position memory button is pushed while the adjustments are being mode**
  The operation will stop. To reactivate the system, push the desired button (1 or 2) again.

- **If the battery is disconnected**
  The memorized are erased when the battery is disconnected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| - **Seat adjustment caution**
  Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel. |
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

**Head restraints**

![Diagram of head restraints]

1. **Vertical adjustment**
   
   Push and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

2. **Angle adjustment** *

3. **Removal**
   
   Pull the head restraint up while pushing the lock release button.

*: Front seats only

---

**Adjusting the height of the head restraints**

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

---

**Adjusting the rear center seat head restraints**

Always raise the head restraint to the lock position when using.

---

**Head restraints of different seats**

The head restraints are specially designed for the seats on which they are installed.

---

**CAUTION**

**Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.

- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt

1 Fastening the belt
   Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt
   Press the release button.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Adjusting the height of the belt (front seats)

1. Down
2. Up

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)

If the shoulder belt sits close to a person’s neck, use the seat belt comfort guide.

1. Pull the comfort guide from the pocket.
2. Slide the belt past the slot of the guide.
   - The elastic cord must be behind the seat belt.
Buckle, position and release the seat belt.

**Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)**

The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.
Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger’s shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 98)

Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 46)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.
■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 46)

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle’s seat belt. (→P. 95)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle’s seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 46 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

The seat belts cannot be used after a pretensioner has been activated. After an accident, have your Lexus dealer inspect the pretensioners. Make sure the pretensioners are replaced if they have been activated.

■ Seat belt extender

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.
Wearing a seat belt

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. Failing to do so may cause death or severe injury.

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there’s no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.
### CAUTION

#### Using a seat belt comfort guide

- Make sure the belt is not twisted and that it lies flat. The elastic cord must be behind the belt and the guide must be on the front.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop while driving, remove and store the comfort guide in its pocket when it is not in use.
- Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the neck, and should not fall off the shoulder.
  Failure to observe these precautions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

#### Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

### NOTICE

#### When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Steering wheel (manually adjustable type)

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

**CAUTION**

- **Caution while driving**
  Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- **After adjusting the steering wheel**
  Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident.

**STEP 1** Hold the steering wheel and pull up the lever.

**STEP 2** Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel.

**STEP 3** Release the lever.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Steering wheel (power-adjustable type)

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

1. Up
2. Down
3. Away from the driver
4. Toward the driver

Auto tilt away

When the key is removed from the engine switch, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Inserting the key into the engine switch returns the steering wheel to its original position.

Customization

Setting of the auto tilt-away function can be disabled. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

⚠️ CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In AUTO mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.

To turn AUTO mode ON/OFF, press and hold the switch for 3 seconds.

The indicator comes on when AUTO mode is turned ON.

The anti-glare mirror default mode is AUTO. The anti-glare mirror is automatically set to AUTO whenever the engine switch is in the ON position.

---

To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover it.

---

⚠️ CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the engine switch is in the ACC or ON position.

1. Pull down the cover
2. Select a mirror to adjust (L: left or R: right)
3. Adjust the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

- **When the mirrors are fogged up**
  Turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (→P. 212)

- **Folding back the mirrors**
  Push back in the direction of the vehicle’s rear.

- **One-touch adjustment of the mirror angle**
  (vehicles with driving position memory)
  A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and adjusted with the touch of a button. (→P. 43)
Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with driving position memory)

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between L and R).

Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to AUTO mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 55)

⚠️ CAUTION

When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving. Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the surface of the mirror, as it may be hot.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Roof luggage carrier (if equipped)

**Adjusting the position of cross rails**

**STEP 1**

Pull the lock release lever up to release the cross rails.

**STEP 2**

Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage and release the lever.
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

CAUTION

■ Cross rail adjustment
Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by pushing forward and rearward them.
Failure to do so may cause an unexpected accident or severe injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

■ When loading cargo
Observe the following precautions.

● Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.

● If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (⇒ P. 428)

● Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.

● Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.

● If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.

● Do not exceed 165 lb. (75 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

NOTICE

■ When loading the luggage
Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.
The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.

1. Closing
2. One-touch closing*
3. Opening
4. One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

**Lock switch**

Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches. Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.
The power windows can be operated when
The engine switch must be in the ON position.

Linked door lock window operation
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the key. (→P. 27)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 24)

Retained accessory power
The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to the ACC or LOCK position. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Jam protection function
If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

If the power window does not work correctly
The power windows must be initialized in order to ensure proper operation. (Perform for each window with the switch for each seat.)

STEP 1  Open the window halfway.
STEP 2  Fully close the window by pulling the switch up and continue holding the switch for one second.

The indicator on the switch changes from a flashing pattern to being on when initial settings are complete.

Customization
Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.
CAUTION

■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows. Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.
Use the overhead switches to open, close and tilt the moon roof up and down.

**Opening and closing**

- **Standard type**
  
  1. **Open**
     
     The moon roof stops slightly before the fully opened position. Push the switch again to fully open.
  
  2. **Close**
     
     Push the switch in the either direction to stop the moon roof partway.

- **Multi-panel type**
  
  1. **Open**
  
  2. **Closes the center and rear panels**
  
  3. **Closes the front panel (push and hold)**
     
     Push the switch in the either direction to stop the moon roof partway.
1. Tilt up
2. Tilt down

Push the switch in the either side to stop the moon roof partway.

1. Tilt up
2. Tilt down (push and hold)
The moon roof can be operated when
The engine switch is in the ON position.

Linked door lock moon roof operation (standard type)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the key. (→P. 27)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 24)

Operating the moon roof after turning the engine switch to the ACC or LOCK position
The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to the ACC or LOCK position. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

Jam protection function
If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

Open moon roof reminder buzzer
A buzzer will sound if the moon roof is left open when you turn the engine switch to the ACC or LOCK position and open the driver’s door.

If the moon roof does not work correctly (Multi-panel type only)
The moon roof must be initialized in order to ensure proper operation.

To reduce moon roof wind noise
Drive with the moon roof where it has stopped when opening automatically.

Sunshade
The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.
Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→ P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ When opening the moon roof (multi-panel type)

- Before opening the moon roof, make sure the radio antenna is in the lock position.
  Otherwise, the antenna may get caught between the moon roof and frame.
- There is the possibility that water or rain will get into the vehicle if you operate the moon roof after a rainfall, snowfall or car wash. Wipe the moon roof dry with a cloth before operating it.
Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

**Before refueling the vehicle**
Stop the engine and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

**Opening the fuel tank cap**

**STEP 1**
Push the fuel filler door opener.

**STEP 2**
Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

**STEP 3**
Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.
1-5. Refueling

Closing the fuel tank cap

When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until one clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

Fuel types
Use unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Fuel tank capacity
Approximately 19.2 gal. (72.5 L, 15.9 Imp. gal.)

When the fuel filler door opener is inoperable
The handle can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch because the battery is discharged or for any other reason.
CAUTION

■ Refueling the vehicle
Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

● Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity. Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.

● Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.

● Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.

● Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.

● Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.

● Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel cap
Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Refueling
Do not spill fuel during refueling. Failing to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormall or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle’s painted surface.
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

The indicator light flashes after the key has been removed from the engine switch to indicate that the system is operating.

System maintenance
The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of engine immobilizer system.

Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction
- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

Certifications for the engine immobilizer system
- For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
  FCC ID: MOZRI-20BTY (Made in Japan)
  FCC ID: MOZRI-21BTY (Made in Canada)
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complied with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

**CAUTION**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

**NOTICE**

■ To prevent damage to the key

Do not modify, remove or disable the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.
1-6. Theft deterrent system

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

■ Triggered of the alarm
The alarm is triggered in the following situations.

● A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using a key or wireless remote door lock function with the alarm being set.

● The hood is opened with the alarm being set.

■ Setting the alarm system
Close the doors, hood, and lock all doors using a key or wireless remote door lock function. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

■ Deactivating or stopping the alarm
Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

● Unlock the doors using the key or the wireless remote control.

● Turn the engine switch to the ON position. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
■ Items to check before locking the vehicle
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Triggering of the alarm
The alarm may be triggered in the following situations. Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.
- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood.
- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

■ Panic mode

► Vehicles with power back door
When PANIC is pushed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound for about 30 seconds and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle. To stop the alarm, push any button on the wireless remote control.

► Vehicles without power back door
■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system. If the battery is discharged before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

■ When using the key to unlock the doors

Deactivate the alarm. If the doors are unlocked using the key with the alarm operational, the alarm will be triggered.
1-6. Theft deterrent system

Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)

These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.
1 Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 37)
2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 37)
3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 53, 54)
5 Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 45)
6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 46)
\section*{CAUTION}

\subsection*{While driving}

\begin{itemize}
\item Do not adjust the position of the driver’s seat while driving. Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
\item Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback. A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
\item Do not place anything under the front seats. Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
\end{itemize}

\subsection*{Adjusting the seat position:}

\begin{itemize}
\item Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
\item Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
\end{itemize}
The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

**Front airbags**

1. **Driver airbag/front passenger airbag**
   Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

2. **Driver knee airbag**
   Can help provide driver protection.

**Side and curtain shield airbags**

3. **Side airbags**
   Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

4. **Curtain shield airbags**
   Can help protect primarily the head of outside occupants.
Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat’s position sensor etc. The front passenger’s airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.
In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

**SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver’s seat position sensor, driver’s seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, AIR BAG ON indicator light, AIR BAG OFF indicator light, front passenger’s seat belt buckle switch, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (→P. 398)

**If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The front windshield may crack.

**Operating conditions (front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 90)

**Operating conditions (side airbags)**

- The SRS side airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side.
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→ P. 90)

**Operating conditions (curtain shield airbags)**

The SRS curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side or vehicle rollover.

**Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.

- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits a curb stone.
■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle
The SRS side airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.

- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.

- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.

- The pad section of the steering wheel, front passenger airbag cover or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

  Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.

Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
CAUTION

- SRS airbag precautions

- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver’s seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver’s seat belt, the SRS driver’s airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver’s airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 95)
**CAUTION**

**SRS airbag precautions**

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

- Do not allow a child to sit on the knees of a front passenger while the vehicle is moving.

- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.

- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.

- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
<th>SRS airbag precautions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 79. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploys, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 79. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.
CAUTION

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components
Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle’s suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.
Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.

1. SRS warning light
2. Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light
3. AIR BAG OFF indicator light
4. AIR BAG ON indicator light

**Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system**

**Adult**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/ warning light</th>
<th>AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights</th>
<th>AIR BAG ON</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Flashing*2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger airbag</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbag on the front passenger seat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Child *3 or child restraint system* *4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/warning light</th>
<th>AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights</th>
<th>AIR BAG OFF *5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Flashing *2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger airbag</td>
<td>Deactivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbag on the front passenger seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side</td>
<td>Activated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unoccupied

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/warning light</th>
<th>AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights</th>
<th>Not illuminated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger airbag</td>
<td>Deactivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side airbag on the front passenger seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side</td>
<td>Activated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
<td>Deactivated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a malfunction in the system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator/ warning light</th>
<th>AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights</th>
<th>AIR BAG OFF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices</td>
<td>Front passenger airbag</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Side airbag on the front passenger seat</td>
<td>Deactivated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side</td>
<td>Activated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt pretensioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 95)

*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 98)
CAUTION

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger’s seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seat-back pocket or armrest).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the AIR BAG OFF indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger’s airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
CAUTION

Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.

- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 98)

- Do not remove the seat.

- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.

- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 98)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

- Infant seat
When the child restraint system is not in use

Leave the child restraint system properly secured on the seat. Do not store the restraint loosely on a passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle’s seat belt. (→P. 46)
CAUTION

Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle’s interior.

- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

- A forward-facing child restraint system should allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer’s instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the rear seats using a seat belt or a child restraint lower anchorage. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

1. Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver’s seat belt) (→ P. 46)

2. Child restraint lower anchorages
   Lower anchorages are provided for the outside rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)

3. Anchor bracket (for top strap)
   Anchor brackets are provided for all rear seats.
Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

■ Rear facing child seat — Infant/convertible

**STEP 1**
Place the child seat on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

**STEP 2**
Run the seat belt through the infant seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

**STEP 3**
Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.
While pushing the child seat down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

■ Forward facing — Convertible child seat

Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.
While pushing the child seat into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

Sit the child in the child seat. Fit the seat belt to the child seat according to the manufacturer’s instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child’s shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 46)
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Installation with child restraint lower anchorages

Fold the seatback forward and then back to the 1st lock position (most upright position) until it locks into place. Adjust the seatback to the 3rd lock position.

1st lock position
3rd lock position

STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.
Before driving

**Type A**

Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages.

**Type B**

Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchorages. (→P. 104)
For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

**Child restraint systems with a top strap**

**STEP 1**
Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or a lower anchors, and remove the head restraint.

**STEP 2**
Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

**STEP 3**
Replace the head restraint and lift it up to the uppermost lock position.
- Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages
  Anchorages conform to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2. Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used. This vehicle is designed to confirm to the SAE J1819.
**CAUTION**

- **When installing a booster seat**
  Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→ P. 49)
  - ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.
  - Do not allow the child to play with the seat belt or the child could be killed or seriously injured.

- **When installing a child restraint system**
  Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
  If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
  - If the driver’s seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
  - Only put a forward facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CAUTION</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>When installing a child restraint system</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When using the lower anchorages for a child restraint system, ensure that the seat is moved to the rear-most position, with the seatback close to the child restraint system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child’s shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child’s neck, but not so that it could fall off the child’s shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Push and pull the child seat in different directions to be sure it is secure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Do not use a seat belt extender</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchorages</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child seat. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2-1. Driving procedures ........ 110
   Driving the vehicle.............. 110
   Engine (ignition) switch........ 117
   Automatic Transmission......... 120
   Turn signal lever (type A) ..... 125
   Turn signal lever (type B) ..... 126
   Parking brake...................... 127

2-2. Instrument cluster .......... 128
   Gauges and meters............... 128
   Indicators and warning lights ................................ 130
   Trip information display ....... 134

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers ... 137
   Headlight switch (type A) .... 137
   Headlight switch (type B) .... 140
   Fog light switch (type A) ...... 143
   Fog light switch (type B) ...... 144
   Windshield wipers and washer (type A) ........................ 145
   Windshield wipers and washer (type B) ........................ 149
   Rear window wiper and washer (type A) ..................... 153
   Rear window wiper and washer (type B) ..................... 154

Headlight cleaner switch .... 155

2-4. Using other driving systems ........ 156
   Cruise control...................... 156
   Dynamic laser cruise control ........................................ 159
   Driving assist systems ......... 169
   Electronically modulated air suspension ........................ 174

2-5. Driving information ....... 179
   Off-road precautions ............ 179
   Cargo and luggage ................ 184
   Vehicle load limits ................ 187
   Winter driving tips .............. 188
   Trailer towing ..................... 193
   Dinghy towing ..................... 203
2-1. Driving procedures
Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the engine
  → P. 117

■ Driving

  **STEP 1** With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D.
  (→ P. 120)

  **STEP 2** Release the parking brake.
  (→ P. 127)

  **STEP 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

  **STEP 1** With the shift lever in D, push the brake pedal.

  **STEP 2** If necessary, set the parking brake.

  When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N.
  (→ P. 120)

■ Parking the vehicle

  **STEP 1** With the shift lever in D, push the brake pedal.

  **STEP 2** Set the parking brake.
  (→ P. 127)

  **STEP 3** Shift the shift lever to P.
  (→ P. 120)

  **STEP 4** Turn the engine switch to stop the engine.

  **STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

Starting on a steep uphill

  **STEP 1** Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to D.

  **STEP 2** Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

  **STEP 3** Release the parking brake.
Driving in the rain
- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Breaking in your new Lexus
To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:
- For the first 200 miles (300 km): Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km): Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 1000 miles (1600 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system
Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down.

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country
Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 430)

Normal characteristics after turning off the engine
Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.
2-1. Driving procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **When starting the vehicle**  
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping. |
| **When driving the vehicle**  
- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal. Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.  
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.  
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R. Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.  
- If you smell exhaust fumes in the vehicle make sure that the back door is closed and open the windows to ensure plenty of fresh air enters the vehicle. If you can smell exhaust fumes even through there are no other vehicles in surrounding area, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer. Continued inhalation of exhaust fumes can lead to gas poisoning or even death.  
- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to P, R or N while the vehicle is moving. Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission system and may result in a loss of vehicle control.  
- Do not shift the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the engine brake to not operate properly and lead to an accident.  
- Do not turn the engine off while driving. The power steering and brake booster system will not operate properly if the engine is not running.  
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill. Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.121) |
When driving the vehicle

- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- With electronically modulated air suspension vehicles, if you drive through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed of firmness, put the vehicle height in the “HI” (high) mode with the height select switch and then turn off the electronically modulated air suspension by pushing the height control switch. Drive your vehicle at 19 mph (30 km/h) or lower speed.

When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.
CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is stopped
  - Do not race the engine.
    If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
  - Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
    If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
  - Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is running to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

■ When the vehicle is parked
  - Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
    Doing so may result in the following.
    - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
    - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
    - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle’s electrical components.
  - Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
    Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  - Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
    Doing so may cause burns.
  - Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build up, or where snow is expected to fall.
    Exhaust gases may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle
  Always turn the engine off.
  Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or press the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal engine overheating.
  Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.
## CAUTION

**When braking the vehicle**

- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking. In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer. Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

## NOTICE

**While driving the vehicle**

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

**When parking the vehicle**

Always put the shift lever in P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

**Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time. Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

**If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.
Notice

### If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 412)

### When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transaxle, transfer (4WD vehicles), differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (4WD vehicles), bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.
2-1. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch

■ Engine switch

1. LOCK:
The steering wheel is locked and the key can be removed.

2. ACC:
Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

3. ON:
All electrical components can be used.

4. START

■ Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.
STEP 3 Sit in the driver’s seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.
STEP 4 Turn the key to the START position and start the engine.

■ Turning the key from ACC to LOCK

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to P.
STEP 2 Push in the key and turn to the LOCK position.
2-1. Driving procedures

■ Steering lock release

When starting the engine, the engine switch may seem stuck in the LOCK position. To free it, turn the key while turning the steering wheel slightly in either direction.

■ If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→ P. 70)

■ Starting the engine using the flat key

Remove the flat key from its case. Insert the key into the engine switch.

Bring the key case close to the engine switch within 10 seconds as indicated by an arrow.

Put the key case away when the indicator light goes out. This means the engine immobilizer system has turned off.

Start the engine within 60 seconds after the indicator light goes off.
**CAUTION**

- **When starting the engine**
  
  Always start the engine while sitting in the driver’s seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- **Caution when driving**
  
  Do not turn the engine switch to the LOCK position while driving. If, in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the engine switch only to the ACC position.

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent battery discharge**
  
  Do not leave the engine switch in the ACC or ON position for long periods without the engine running.

- **When starting the engine**
  
  - Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring system.
  - Do not race a cold engine.
  - If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.
Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

- Shifting the shift lever

While the engine switch is in the ON position, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

1 Standard type
2 Multi-mode type
### Shift position uses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift position</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Standard type</th>
<th>Multi-mode type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Parking the vehicle or starting the engine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Reversing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Normal driving*1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td>S mode driving*2 (→P.122)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Position for engine braking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3,2</td>
<td>Position for more powerful engine braking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Position for maximum engine braking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the D position for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.
Selecting the snow mode
Use the snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Turn the ECT SNOW switch on. Press the button once more to cancel the snow mode.

Changing shift ranges in S mode (multi-mode type only)
Shift the shift lever to the S position and operate the shift lever.

- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is automatically set to 4.
123

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Shift ranges and their functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift range</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 5 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 4 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 3 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 2 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Setting the gear at 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ Downshifting restrictions

► Standard type

Keep the engine rpm from going into red zone. The maximum allowable speed is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shift position</th>
<th>Maximum speed mph (km/h)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 → 3</td>
<td>93 (150)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 → 2</td>
<td>58 (93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 → L</td>
<td>25 (40)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

► Multi-mode type

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)
2-1. Driving procedures

■ When driving with the cruise control system or dynamic laser cruise control system

The engine brake will not operate when downshifting from D or 5 to 4.
(→P. 156, 159)

■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the engine is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 419

■ If the S indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to S (multi-mode type only)

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in D.)
When driving

Turn signal lever (type A)

When driving

1. Driving procedures

Turn signals can be operated when
The engine switch is in the ON position.

If the indicators flash faster than usual
Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

1. Left turn
2. Right turn
3. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
4. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever (type B)

- **Turn signals can be operated when**
  The engine switch is in the ON position.

- **If the indicators flash faster than usual**
  Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

1. **Left turn**
2. **Right turn**
3. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
4. Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
   The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
2-1. Driving procedures
Parking brake

Sets the parking brake*
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

*: Fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.

---

**NOTICE**

**Before driving**

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.
The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

The following gauges and meters illuminate when the engine switch is in the ON position.

1. **Tachometer**
   - Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

2. **Speedometer**
   - Displays the vehicle speed.

3. **Fuel gauge**
   - Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

4. **Engine coolant temperature gauge**
   - Displays the engine coolant temperature.
**Odometer/Trip meter/Dynamic laser cruise control display**

- Dynamic laser cruise control display
  → P. 159

- Odometer
  Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

- Trip meter
  Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

**Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button**

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. Pushing and holding the button will reset the trip meter when the trip meter is being displayed.

---

**Instrument panel light control**

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

1. Darker
2. Brighter

---

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**
  - Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
  - The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→ P. 424)
The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle’s various systems.

◮ Instrument cluster

The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

◮ Center panel
### Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal indicator</td>
<td>→P.125, 126</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight high beam indicator</td>
<td>→P.137, 140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight indicator (U.S.A.)</td>
<td>→P.137, 140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail light indicator (Canada)</td>
<td>→P.137, 140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift position indicator (vehicles with a standard automatic transmission)</td>
<td>→P.120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control indicator</td>
<td>→P.156, 159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conventional cruise control indicator</td>
<td>→P.159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ready mode indicator</td>
<td>→P.159</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSC OFF indicator</td>
<td>→P.170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slip indicator</td>
<td>→P.169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFS OFF indicator (vehicles with discharge headlights)</td>
<td>→P.138, 141</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Indicators**

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

(vehicles with a multi-mode automatic transmission)

Shift position and shift range indicators (→P.120)

(vehicles with a multi-mode automatic transmission)

ECT SNOW indicator (→P.122)

(if equipped)

Electronically modulated air suspension indicator (→P.174)

* AIR BAG ON indicator (→P.90)

* AIR BAG OFF indicator (→P.90)
Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle’s systems.

*: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to the ON position to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as ABS, VSC and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.
The trip information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.

1 Trip information display
   • Driving time
   • Average vehicle speed
   • Average fuel consumption
   • Current fuel consumption
   • Driving distance
   • Driving range

Display and operation

Display items can be switched by pushing the INFO switch.
2-2. Instrument cluster

- **Driving time**
  Displays the elapsed time after the engine starts.
  When the engine is started, driving time is counted from 0:00. Up to 11:59 (11 hours, 59 minutes) can be displayed.

- **Average vehicle speed**
  Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset.
  The function can be reset by pushing the INFO switch for longer than one second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

- **Average fuel consumption**
  Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

- **Current fuel consumption**
  Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

- **Driving distance**
  Displays the driving distance since the engine was started.
  The function can be reset by pushing the INFO switch for longer than one second when the driving distance is displayed.
2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Driving range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

![Driving Range Display](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ Caution while driving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do not adjust the display while driving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch (type A)

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

The headlights and parking lights turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in the ON position)

Turning on the high beam headlights

1. With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

   Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2. Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

   Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.
AFS (Adaptive Front lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the level of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 18 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

- **Deactivating AFS**
  
  Turn the switch OFF to deactivate AFS.
  
  1. OFF
  2. ON

- **Daytime running light system**
  
  To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

- **Headlight control sensor**
  
  The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

  Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight control system to malfunction.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

- **Automatic light off system**

  - When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after all doors are closed with the engine switch turned to the ACC or LOCK position. (The light turns off immediately if the LOCK button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)
  
  - When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically with the engine switch turned to the ACC or LOCK position and the driver’s door is opened.

  To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to the ON position, or turn the light switch OFF once and then back to the or position.

- **Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with discharge headlights)**

  The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

- **If the indicator flashes... (vehicles with discharge headlights)**

  It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- **Customization**

  Setting (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed. (→P. 453)

  Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **To prevent battery discharge**

  Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers
Headlight switch (type B)

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

The headlights and parking lights turn on and off automatically.
(When the engine switch is in the ON position)

### Turning on the high beam headlights

1. With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.
   
   Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2. Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.
   
   Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.
AFS (vehicles with discharge headlights)

AFS (Adaptive Front lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the level of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 18 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

- **Deactivating AFS**

  Turn the switch OFF to deactivate AFS.

  1. OFF
  2. ON

- **Daytime running light system**

  To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

- **Headlight control sensor**

  The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight control system to malfunction.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

- **Automatic light off system**
  - When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after all doors are closed with the engine switch turned to the ACC or LOCK position. (The light turns off immediately if the LOCK button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)
  - When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically with the engine switch turned to the ACC or LOCK position and the driver’s door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to the ON position, or turn the light switch to the off position once and then back to the or position.

- **Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with discharge headlights)**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

- **If the **afs** indicator flashes... (vehicles with discharge headlights)**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- **Customization**

Setting (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

---

⚠️ **NOTICE**

- **To prevent battery discharge**

  Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
Fog light switch (type A)

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.

1 To turn the front fog lights off
2 To turn the front fog lights on
The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.

1 To turn the front fog lights off
2 To turn the front fog lights on
Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when INT is selected).

1. Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (increase)
2. Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (decrease)
3. Intermittent windshield wiper operation
4. Low speed windshield wiper operation
5. High speed windshield wiper operation
6. Temporary operation
7. Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)

With AUTO selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume.

![Diagram of wiper control stalk with labels]

1. Sensor sensitivity (low)
2. Sensor sensitivity (high)
3. Rain-sensing wiper operation
4. Low speed wiper operation
5. High speed wiper operation
6. Temporary operation
7. Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch must be in the ON position.

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)

With LO selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary. (However, the mode will not be switched when the adjustment dial for the automatic wiper control sensitivity is set to +.)
Rain drop sensor (vehicles with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Customization

The setting of the wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary can be changed. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **When the windshield is dry**  
Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield. |
| **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**  
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually. |
Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

When intermittent wiper operation is selected, wiper intervals can be adjusted.

1. Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (decrease)
2. Intermittent windshield wiper interval adjustment (increase)
3. Intermittent windshield wiper operation
4. Low speed windshield wiper operation
5. High speed windshield wiper operation
6. Temporary operation
7. Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.
Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)
With AUTO selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume.

1. Sensor sensitivity (high)
2. Sensor sensitivity (low)
3. Rain-sensing wiper operation
4. Low speed wiper operation
5. High speed wiper operation
6. Temporary operation
7. Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when
The engine switch must be in the ON position.

Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)
When low speed wiper operation is selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary.
(However, the mode will not be switched when the adjustment dial for the automatic wiper control sensitivity is set to high.)
Rain drop sensor (vehicles with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Customization

The setting of the wiper operation when the vehicle is stationary can be changed. (→P. 453)
Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.
### 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

**NOTICE**

- **When the windshield is dry**
  Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

- **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**
  Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers
Rear window wiper and washer (type A)

The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when
The engine switch must be in the ON position.

⚠️ NOTICE

- When the rear window is dry
  Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the rear window.
The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when
The engine switch must be in the ON position.

⚠️ NOTICE

When the rear window is dry
Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the rear window.
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight cleaner switch (if equipped)

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.

Press the switch to clean the headlights.

The headlight cleaner can be operated when

When the engine switch must be in the ON position and the headlight switch is turned ON.

⚠️ NOTICE

💡 When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not use this function when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause the washer fluid pump to overheat.
Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.

**Set the vehicle speed**

**STEP 1**
Turn the ON-OFF button ON.
Push the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

**STEP 2**
Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set the cruise control speed.

**Adjusting the speed setting**

1. Increase speed
2. Decrease speed
Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.
■ Fine adjustment of the set speed
   Adjustment of the set speed by approximately 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

■ Cruise control can be set when
   ● The shift lever is in the D or 4 (standard type) or D, 4 or 5 range of S (multi-mode type).
   ● Vehicle speed is between approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) and 125 mph (200 km/h).

■ Accelerating
   The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

■ Automatic cruise control cancellation
   The set speed is automatically cancelled in any of the following situations.
   ● Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
     At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
   ● Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h)
   ● VSC is activated
If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Turn the ON-OFF button off once, and then reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION

To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Keep the ON-OFF button off when not in use.

Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
- On winding roads
Dynamic laser cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.

**Select cruise mode**

Selecting vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

1. Turn the ON-OFF button ON.
   Push the button once more to deactivate.

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

1. Turn the ON-OFF button ON.
   Push the button once more to deactivate.
   Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the engine switch is turned to the ON position.

2. Switch to constant speed control mode.
   (push and hold for approximately one second)
Driving in the selected cruise control mode
Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set.

Adjusting the speed setting
1. Increase speed
2. Decrease speed
Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

Canceling and resuming the speed setting
1. Cancel
Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.
The setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.
2. Resume
To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.
### Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

Each push of the switch toward you changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance:

1. **Long**
2. **Medium**
3. **Short**

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is automatically set to the long mode when the engine switch is turned to the ON position.

A mark will be displayed to indicate the presence of the vehicle if a vehicle is running ahead of you.
Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a laser radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close when traveling on long downhill slopes.

1 Example of constant speed cruising (when there are no vehicles ahead):
When set to 62 mph (100 km/h)
The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

2 Example of deceleration cruising (when the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed):
When fixed speed cruising is set at 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)
When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you on the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.
3 Example of follow-up cruising (when following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed):
When the speed is set to 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)
The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration (when there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead):
When the speed is set to 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead driving at 50 mph (80 km/h) is out of the lane
When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

- Fine adjustment of the set speed
  Adjustment of the set speed by the following speed can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.
  - In the constant speed control mode: Approximately 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h)
  - In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode:
    - U.S.A.: Approximately 5 mph (8 km/h)
    - Canada: Approximately 3 mph (5 km/h)

- Dynamic laser cruise control warning lights, display and buzzers
Warning lights, display and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to alert you to the need for caution while driving.

1 Warning code
2 CRUISE indicator light
3 Master warning light
The warning codes indicate the following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning code</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Correction procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Indicates that the laser radar sensor is dirty or covered with ice.</td>
<td>Clean the sensor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| E2           | Indicates that the system is unable to judge the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. | • Stop the wiper or switch the wiper to variable intermittent operation.  
• Turn off the SNOW mode.  
• Avoid direct sunlight.  
• Wait until the weather becomes clear. |
| E3 (Flashing)| Indicates that a system malfunction has been detected. | Turn off and restart the engine switch.                    |

If the same code appears again after implementing the correction procedure, or if the cruise control cannot be set, contact your Lexus dealer.

**The dynamic laser cruise can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D or 4 (standard type) or D or, 4 or 5 range of S (multi-mode type).
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 27 mph (45 km/h) and 85 mph (135 km/h).

**Accelerating**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.
Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.*
- The windshield wipers are operating at high or low speed.*
- The ECT SNOW switch is set to snow mode.*

*: Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving must be reset by turning the ON-OFF button on again.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Automatically cancelling constant speed control

The set speed is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 55 mph (88 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance options</th>
<th>Vehicle-to-vehicle distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>Approximately 245 ft. (75 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Approximately 165 ft. (50 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Laser radar sensor

Always keep the sensor clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.) Dynamic laser cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

Certification

This product is a class I laser product complied with 21 C. F. R part 1040. 10. and 1040. 11.
## CAUTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before using dynamic laser cruise control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Keep the ON-OFF button off when not in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situations unsuitable for dynamic laser cruise control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not use dynamic laser cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In heavy traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On roads with sharp bends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On winding roads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At entrances to expressways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where buzzer can be heard often</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CAUTION

When the laser radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead
Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the proximity alarm (→P.163) will not be activated, and an accident may result.
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly
Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the laser radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and an accident may result.
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable

To ensure the laser radar sensor functions correctly
Do not do the following to the sensor as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in an accident.
- Stick or attach anything to them
- Leave them dirty
- Disassemble, subject them to strong shocks
- Modify or paint them
- Replace them with non-genuine parts
To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

- **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**
  Restrains the vehicle from slipping when driving on slick road surfaces or in the event of sudden braking.

- **Brake Assist**
  Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

- **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**
  Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

- **TRAC (Traction Control)**
  Maintains drive power and prevents the front wheels (2WD models) or all wheels (4WD models) from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

**When the VSC/TRAC are operating**

If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, or if the front wheels (2WD models) or all wheels (4WD models) spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.
To disable TRAC and/or VSC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRAC and VSC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

■ Turning off TRAC

Quickly push and release the button to turn off TRAC.

The slip indicator light should come on.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

■ Turning off TRAC and VSC

Push and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off TRAC and VSC.

The slip indicator light and VSC OFF indicator light should come on.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.
■ Automatic reactivation of TRAC and VSC

Turning the engine switch OFF after turning off the TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

■ Automatic TRAC reactivation

If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

■ Automatic TRAC/VSC reactivation

If the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC and TRAC

○ A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.

○ Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  • Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  • A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  • The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  • The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.
### CAUTION

- **The ABS does not operate effectively when**
  - The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
  - The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on the wet or slick road.

- **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating will exceed that of normal conditions**
  The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle’s stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.
  - When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
  - When driving with tire chains
  - When driving over bumps in the road
  - When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

- **TRAC may not operate effectively when**
  Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.
  Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.
2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ When the VSC is activated
The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully.
Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

■ When TRAC and VSC are off
Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off TRAC and VSC unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires
Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressure level.
The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.
2-4. Using other driving systems

Electronically modulated air suspension (if equipped)

The electronically modulated air suspension allows the driver to control the vehicle’s height in order to adjust for driving conditions. Select the desired height with the height selector switch.

1 Easy access mode switch
2 Height control switch
3 Height selector switch

Selecting vehicle height

1 Higher
2 Lower

Vehicle height can be adjusted only when the engine is running. The indicator light stops blinking, and comes on continuously to indicate that the mode shift is completed.
■ Height modes

- N mode (normal mode): For ordinary driving
  Normal height
- HI mode (high mode): For driving on bumpy roads
  1.2 in. (30 mm) higher than the normal height
  The HI mode is unavailable when the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
- LO mode (low mode): For sporty driving (on winding road or high speed driving, etc.)
  0.6 in. (15 mm) lower than the normal height

■ Easy access mode

You can select this mode for easy access and easy loading of the vehicle.

If the engine is stopped when this mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically. The indicator light stops blinking, and comes on continuously to indicate that the shift is completed. The easy access mode is available when N or LO mode is selected.
Disabling the height control

When the height control switch is pressed, the vehicle height returns to the mode last selected.

When the vehicle’s speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), the electronically modulated air suspension turns ON automatically.

Automatic leveling function

Regardless of the number of occupants or the luggage load, vehicle height in any mode is always adjusted to a fixed height by the automatic leveling function.

When N mode is selected

The vehicle height will lower about 0.3 in. (7 mm) when vehicle speed exceeds 62 mph (100 km/h).
The vehicle height will return to the normal height when vehicle speed is reduced to under 50 mph (80 km/h).

When HI mode is selected

The vehicle height will change to N mode when vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h) or driving at the speeds of 19 mph (30 km/h).
Even if vehicle speed is then reduced to under 31 mph (50 km/h), the height will not return to HI mode.

When LO mode is selected

The vehicle height will change to N mode when the engine is turned off.

When easy access mode is selected

- The vehicle height will change to N mode when vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (12 km/h).
- The vehicle height will change to N mode when the engine is restarted.
The electronically modulated air suspension will not operate in the following cases:

- The underbody of the vehicle is touching the surface of the road.
- The area around the suspension is covered with ice.

The indicator lights will blink, turn off and then turn on continuously to indicate that the electronically modulated air suspension is not operational. To re-enable operation, turn off the engine and then restart it.

Even if you hear an operating noise

This does not indicate a problem in the electronically modulated air suspension.

If there is a problem somewhere in the electronically modulated air suspension

The height control OFF indicator light will behave as follows:

- The light will not come on when the engine switch is turned on.
- The light will blink.

Although the vehicle may be driven, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

---

**CAUTION**

The electronically modulated air suspension must be turned OFF in the following circumstances:

Otherwise, the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle’s height to change, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- When driving through water such as shallow streams (Put the vehicle height in HI mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. Drive at 19 mph [30 km/h] or slower.)
- When jacking up the vehicle, installing tire chains or tying the vehicle with chains/wires for transportation via flat bed truck (Turn off the electronically modulated air suspension and stop the engine.)
- When the vehicle must be towed (Put the vehicle height in N mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.)
- When the vehicle gets stuck (Turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.)
- When disconnecting a trailer (Put the vehicle height in LO mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.)
2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ Selecting the correct height mode

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the vehicle, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Before you lower the vehicle's height or select the easy access mode, check under the vehicle to make sure that no one is there.
- The HI mode should be used for off-road driving conditions. As the vehicle’s center of gravity is higher in this setting, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly.
- Do not select HI mode when you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier. This may result in a loss of control or vehicle rollover.

NOTICE

■ Be careful in any place where overhead space is limited.

When changing to a higher mode or after unloading, the vehicle height will rise. This may cause damage to the vehicle.

■ Do not select LO mode when driving on bumpy roads.

If the underbody of the vehicle touches a rugged road surface, the vehicle may be damaged.

■ Do not change the vehicle height frequently.

The compressor might overheat and cause the operation to stop.
This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

**Off-road vehicle feature**

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.

- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.
CAUTION

Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.

- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.

- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.

- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.

- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.
Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner’s permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

Additional information for off-road driving

- For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:
  To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.
  - State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
  - State Motor Vehicle Bureau
  - Recreational Vehicle Clubs
  - U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management
### CAUTION

**■ Off-road driving precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle’s suspension and chassis.

### NOTICE

**■ To prevent the water damage**

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil’s lubricating qualities.
NOTICE

When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.

- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.
Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

\[
\text{(Cargo capacity)} = (\text{Total load capacity}) - (\text{Total weight of occupants})
\]

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit——

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. \((1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})\)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**Example on your vehicle**

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 925 lb. (420 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

925 lb. – 366 lb. = 559 lb. (420 kg – 166 kg = 254 kg)

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

559 lb. – 388 lb. = 171 lb. (254 kg – 176 kg = 78 kg)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.
CAUTION

Storage precautions

- Do not place anything on the luggage cover, and do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.

- Do not drive with objects on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver’s field of view or move during sharp acceleration or turning, thus impairing the driver’s control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.

- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.

- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.

- Even if the total load of occupant’s weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.
Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

- **Total load capacity**: 925 lb. (420 kg)
  Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

- **Seating capacity**: 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)
  Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

- **Towing capacity**
  - Without towing package: 2000 lb. (907 kg)
  - With towing package: 3500 lb. (1588 kg)
  Towing capacity means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

- **Cargo capacity**
  Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

---

- **Total load capacity and seating capacity**
  These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 346)

---

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- **Overloading the vehicle**
  Do not overload the vehicle. It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.
Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

**Pre-winter preparations**

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
  - Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.

- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

- Tire pressure falls in winter as the outside temperature falls. Add 2.9 to 4.3 psi (20 to 30 kPa, 0.2 to 0.3 kgf/cm² or bar) to the standard tire inflation pressure.
Before driving the vehicle
Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.

- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.

- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.

- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

When driving the vehicle
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle
Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released.
Selecting snow chains

Use the correct snow chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire sizes.

- **Side chain**
  - 1. 0.12 in. (3 mm) in diameter
  - 2. 1.18 in. (30 mm) in length
  - 3. 0.39 in. (10 mm) in width

- **Cross chain**
  - 4. 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter
  - 5. 0.98 in. (25 mm) in length
  - 6. 0.55 in. (14 mm) in width

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the front tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).
■ Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

● Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
● Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on rear tires.
● Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

● Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
● Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
● Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
● Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

● Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
● Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
● Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
● Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **■ Repairing or replacing snow tires**  
Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.  
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire air pressure sensor.  

**■ Fitting tire chains**  
The tire air pressure sensor may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted. |
Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

- **Weight limits**
  Confirm that the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

- **Gross vehicle weight**
  The gross vehicle weight must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) indicated on the Certification Label. The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. Also included is the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.

- **Gross axle weight**
  The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) listed on the Certification Label.

Certification Label
- **Trailer tongue load**

  The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceeding the following.

  Without towing package: 200 lb. (90 kg)
  With towing package: 350 lb. (158 kg)
  (Tongue load / Total trailer weight x 100 = 9 to 11%)

  The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing stations, building supply companies, trucking companies, junk yards, etc.

- **Towing a trailer**

  Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kits, etc.

- **Hitch and tow hitch receiver**

  - **Hitch**

    Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be rated for towing a higher weight, the operator must never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch.
**Tow hitch receiver**

A tow hitch receiver installed under the rear bumper is rated for weight that does not exceed the vehicle’s total towing weight.

---

**Selecting trailer ball**

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.

1. **Trailer ball load rating**
   - Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

2. **Ball diameter**
   - Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

3. **Shank length**
   - Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut at least 2 threads.

4. **Shank diameter**
   - Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.
Connecting trailer lights

► With tow hitch receiver
  Use the socket located under the rear bumper.

► Without tow hitch receiver
  Use the wire harness stored in the rear end under body.

When connecting and disconnecting a trailer (vehicles with electrically modulated air suspension)

► Connecting
  
  **STEP 1** Set the electronically modulated air suspension to LO mode.
  
  **STEP 2** Turn off the engine switch or the electronically modulated air suspension.
  
  **STEP 3** Connect the trailer.
  
  **STEP 4** Turn on the switch that was turned off on step 2.
  
  **STEP 5** Set the electronically modulated air suspension to N mode.

► Disconnecting
  
  **STEP 1** Set the electronically modulated air suspension to LO mode.
  
  **STEP 2** Turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.
  
  **STEP 3** Turn off the engine switch.
  
  **STEP 4** Set the supporting leg of the trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm)
  
  **STEP 5** Turn on the engine switch.
  
  **STEP 6** Turn on the electronically modulated air suspension.
  
  **STEP 7** Wait until vehicle height is stabilized.

Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If the hitch does not disconnect, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 7.
■ Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

● The vehicle’s tires are properly inflated. (→P. 346)
● Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer’s recommendation.
● All trailer lights work
● All lights work each time you connect them.
● The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
● The vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue load, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
● The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
● The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of driving.

■ Maintenance

● If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Services Guide/ Owner’s Manual Supplement/ Scheduled Maintenance").
● Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.
CAUTION

To avoid accident or injury

- The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus the weight of cargo) must not exceed the following.
  Without towing package: 2000 lb. (907 kg)
  With towing package: 3500 lb. (1588 kg)
- If a trailer and cargo weigh over 2000 lb. (907 kg), use a sway control device with sufficient capacity.
- The gross combined weight (sum of your vehicle weight plus its load and the total trailer weight) must not exceed the following.
  Without towing package: 7265 lb. (3295 kg)
  With towing package: 8765 lb. (3976 kg)
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.
- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension, set the vehicle height to the LO mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension to prevent the vehicle height from automatically changing.
- The tow hitch receiver installed on your vehicle must never be used on another vehicle.

Hitches

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.
When driving

CAUTION

■ When towing a trailer
  ● If the total trailer weight exceeds 1000 lb. (450 kg), trailer brakes are required.
  ● Never tap into your vehicle’s hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle’s braking effectiveness.
  ● Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

NOTICE

■ When installing a trailer hitch
  ● Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
  ● Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

■ Brakes
  Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

■ Safety chain
  A safety chain must always be used between the towing vehicle and the trailer. Leave sufficient slack in the chain for turns. The chain should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent the tongue from dropping to the ground in the case that it becomes damaged or separated. For the correct safety chain installation procedure, ask your Lexus dealer.

■ Do not directly splice trailer lights
  Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle’s electrical system and cause a malfunction.
Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. The 3 main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep the following in mind when towing.

- Before starting out, check the trailer lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making turns.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.
● Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.

● Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.

● In order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive. Transmission shift range position must be in 4, in the S mode.

● Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle’s engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 424)

● Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in P. Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

  **STEP 1** Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
  **STEP 2** Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
  **STEP 3** When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
  **STEP 4** Apply the parking brake firmly.
  **STEP 5** Shift into P and turn off the engine.
● When restarting after parking on a slope:

**STEP 1** With the transmission in the P position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

**STEP 2** Shift into 3, 2, 1, or the R position (if reversing).

**STEP 3** Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

**STEP 4** Have someone retrieve the blocks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

■ To avoid an accident

● Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. As instability (swaying) of the towing vehicle-trailer combination increases as speed increases, exceeding 45 mph (72 km/h) may cause loss of control.

● Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.

● Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.

⚠️ NOTICE

- To avoid serious damage to your vehicle
  Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.
2-5. Driving information
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger... 206
   Automatic air conditioning system................................. 206
   Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers, and
   windshield wiper de-icer ........................................ 212

3-2. Using the front audio system.......................... 213
   Audio system type .............................................. 213
   Using the radio ................................................. 215
   Using the CD player ......................................... 222
   Playing back MP3 and WMA discs.............................. 228
   Optimal use of the audio system .................................. 236
   Using the steering wheel audio switches ...................... 239

3-3. Using the rear audio system......................... 241
   Rear seat entertainment system features .................... 241
   Using the DVD player (DVD video)............................ 247
   Using the DVD player (video CD)............................. 254
   Using the DVD player (audio CD/CD text) ................. 256
   Using the DVD player (MP3 discs) ......................... 257
   Using the video mode ........................................ 259
   Changing the initial setting .................................... 261

3-4. Using the interior lights ...................... 268
   Interior lights list ............................................. 268
   • Interior lights ............................................. 271
   • Personal lights ............................................. 272

3-5. Using the storage features .................. 273
   List of storage features .................................. 273
   • Glove box ................................................. 273
   • Console boxes ............................................. 274
   • Overhead console ........................................ 276
   • Cup holders ................................................. 277
   • Door pockets ............................................... 278

3-6. Other interior features ...................... 280
   Sun visors ................................................. 280
   Vanity mirror ................................................. 281
   Clock ......................................................... 282
   Outside temperature display .................................... 283
   Multi-display light control .................................. 284
   Power outlet ................................................. 285
   Seat heaters ................................................. 288
   Armrest ....................................................... 290
   Floor mat ...................................................... 291
   Luggage compartment features ................................ 292
   Garage door opener ........................................ 295
   Compass ....................................................... 300
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

► With navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

► Without navigation system
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

**Using the automatic mode**

**STEP 1** Press [AUTO].

→ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. According to the temperature setting, air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted, and the mode automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

**STEP 2** Press [↑] to increase the temperature and [↓] to decrease the temperature on [TEMP].

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

**Adjusting the settings**

- **Adjusting the temperature setting**
  
  Press [↑] to increase the temperature and [↓] to decrease the temperature on [TEMP].

  Press [↑] (increase) or [↓] (decrease) on [TEMP] to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode). Press [DUAL] to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

  The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time [DUAL] is pressed.

- **Adjusting the fan speed**

  Press [>] (increase) or [<] (decrease) on [FAN].

  Press [OFF] to turn the fan off.
### Changing the air outlets

Press [MODE].

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.

1. Air flows to the upper body.
2. Air flows to the upper body and feet.
3. Air flows to the feet.
4. Air flows to the feet and the front windshield defogger operates.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

### Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press [ ].

The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator OFF) and recirculated air mode (indicator ON) modes each time the button is pressed.
Defogging the front windshield

1. Defogging
   - The air conditioning system control operates automatically.
   - Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode. It is not possible to return to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

- Front outlets (center)
  1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

- Front outlets (right and left side)
  1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
  2. Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

- Rear outlets
  1. Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
  2. Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent

- Using the automatic mode
  Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.
  - The system may switch automatically to recirculated air mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
  - Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
  - Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

- Using the system in recirculated air mode
  The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

- Window defogger feature
  Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to outside air mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

- Outside air temperature approaches 32°F (0°C).
  The air conditioning system may not operate even when is pressed.

- When the indicator light on flashes
  Press and turn off the air conditioning system before turning it on once more. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.
### CAUTION

- **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

  Do not use during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

### NOTICE

- **To prevent battery discharge**

  Do not leave the automatic air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.
Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors. De-icer* is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

ON/OFF

The defoggers and de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

*: Vehicles for Canada only

The defogger and de-icer can be operated when

The engine switch must be in the ON position.

CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirror, as it can become very hot and burn you.

When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.
3-2. Using the front audio system

Audio system type

► With navigation system
Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

► Without navigation system
CD player with changer and AM/FM radio

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using the radio</td>
<td>P. 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the CD player</td>
<td>P. 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing back MP3 and WMA discs</td>
<td>P. 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimal use of the audio system</td>
<td>P. 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the steering wheel audio switches</td>
<td>P. 239</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system’s speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ For vehicles sold in U.S.A. and Canada

- Part 15 of the FCC Rules
  
  FCC Warning:
  Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user’s authority to operate this device.

- Laser products
  - Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself.
    This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
  - This product utilizes a laser.
    Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.
### Setting station presets (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

**STEP 1** Search for desired stations by turning or pressing \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) on.

**STEP 2** Press and hold the button (from 1 to 6) the station is to be set to, and you hear a beep.

### Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

**Scanning the preset radio stations**

**STEP 1** Press and hold \( \text{SCAN} \) until you hear a beep.

Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.
■ Scanning all radio stations within range

**STEP 1** Press \[\text{SCAN}\].
All stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

### RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

**STEP 1** Press \[\text{\& or } \text{\textgreater}\] on \[\text{TYPE}\] during FM reception. The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- ROCK
- EASYLIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- ALERT (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, NO PTY appears on the display.

**STEP 2** Press \[\text{\textless, \textgreater, or \& or \textgreater}\] on \[\text{SEEK-SCAN}\].
The radio seeks or scans the station by the relevant program type.

■ Displaying radio station names

Press \[\text{TEXT}\].
Displaying radio text messages
Press TEXT twice.
If MSG is shown on the display, a text message will be displayed.
If the text continues past the end of the display, ► is displayed. Press and hold TEXT until you hear a beep.

XM® Satellite Radio (if equipped)

Receiving XM® Satellite Radio

STEP 1 Press AM-SAT until SAT is shown on the display.
The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed.
AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn to select the desired channel in the all categories or
press ▲ or ▼ on to select the desired channel in the current category.

Setting XM® Satellite Radio channel presets
Select the desired channel. Press and hold the button (from 1 to
6 ) the channel is to be set to, and you hear a beep.

Changing the channel category
Press ▲ or ▼ on .

Scanning XM® Satellite Radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Press.
STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.
Scanning preset channels

**STEP 1** Press and hold \( \text{SCAN} \) until you hear a beep.

**STEP 2** When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.

**Displaying text information**

Press \( \text{TEXT} \).

The display will show up to 10 characters.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed.

- **CH NAME**
- **TITLE (SONG/PROGRAM TITLE)**
- **NAME (ARTIST NAME/FEATURE)**
- **CH NUMBER**
■ When the battery is disconnected
Station presets are erased.

■ Radio antenna type
- Detachable antenna
  To remove a detachable antenna, carefully turn it counterclockwise.
- Wire antenna
  The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window.

■ Reception sensitivity
- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ Receiving XM® Satellite Radio
The optional Lexus genuine satellite radio tuner and antenna allows you to receive and play XM® Satellite Radio broadcasts. (Subscription is required. Not available in Hawaii and Alaska.)*
- XM® subscriptions
  For detailed information about XM® Satellite Radio or to subscribe, visit XM® on the web at www.xmradio.com or call (800) 967-2346.
- Radio ID
  You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. Select “CH000” using , and the receiver’s 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
  The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM® Satellite Radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM® Satellite Radio are subject to change without notice.
### If the satellite radio does not operate normally

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the display. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANTENNA</strong></td>
<td>The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UPDATING</strong></td>
<td>You have not subscribed to the XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the “CH000” and all free-to-air channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or “CH001”. If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM® Satellite Radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NO SIGNAL</strong></td>
<td>The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LOADING</strong></td>
<td>The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OFF AIR</strong></td>
<td>The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-----</strong></td>
<td>There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at (800) 967-2346 during the following hours*.
Monday - Saturday: 6 a.m. - 2 a.m. Sunday: 8 a.m. - 8 p.m. Eastern Time
*: Subject to change without notice.

**Certifications for the radio tuner**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
3-2. Using the front audio system

Using the CD player

**Loading CDs**

- **Loading a CD**
  
  **STEP 1** Press \[ \text{LOAD} \].
  
  \( \text{WAIT} \) is shown on the display.

  **STEP 2** Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.
  
  The display changes from \( \text{WAIT} \) to \( \text{LOAD} \).

- **Loading multiple CDs**
  
  **STEP 1** Press and hold \[ \text{LOAD} \] until you hear a beep.
  
  \( \text{WAIT} \) is shown on the display.

  **STEP 2** Insert a CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.
  
  The display changes from \( \text{WAIT} \) to \( \text{LOAD} \).

  The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is inserted.
3-2. Using the front audio system

**STEP 3** Insert the next CD when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green again. Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs. To stop the operation, press  .

### Ejecting CDs

**Ejecting a CD**

**STEP 1** To select the CD to be ejected, press ▲ or ▼ on . The number of the CD selected is shown on the display.

**STEP 2** Press ▲ and remove the CD.

**Ejecting all the CDs**

Press and hold ▲ until you hear a beep, and then remove the CDs.

### Selecting, fast-forwarding, rewinding, and scanning tracks

**Selecting a track**

Press ▲ to move up and ▼ to move down using until the desired track number is displayed.

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold ▲ or ▼ on  .

**Scanning a CD**

**STEP 1** Press SCAN . The first ten seconds of each track will be played.

**STEP 2** Press the switch again when the desired track is reached.
3-2. Using the front audio system

Selecting a CD

■ To select a CD to play
To select the desired CD, press ▲ or ▼ on .

■ To scan loaded CDs
**STEP 1** Press and hold until you hear a beep.
The first ten seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.  
**STEP 2** Press the button again when the desired CD is reached.

Repeat play

■ To repeat a track
Press (RPT).

■ To repeat all of the tracks on a CD
Press and hold (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Random playback

■ Current CD
Press (RAND).
Tracks are played in random order until random playback is canceled.

■ All CDs
Press and hold (RAND) until you hear a beep.
Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in a random order until the button is pressed once more.

Switching the display

Press .
Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the order of Track no./Elapsed time → CD title → Track name.
Canceling random, repeat and scan playback
Press 1 (RAND), 2 (RPT), or SCAN again.

When LOAD, ERROR or WAIT is shown on the display
LOAD: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the CD.
ERROR: This indicates a trouble either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.
WAIT: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press DISC. Contact your Lexus dealer if the CD still cannot be played back.

Discs that can be used
Discs with the marks shown below can be used. Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

CDs with copy-protect features may not be used.

CD player protection feature
To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods
CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

Lens cleaners
Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.
**NOTICE**

**CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs, 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD insert/eject function.

- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).
- Low-quality and deformed CDs.
- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.
NOTICE

CD player precautions
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

● Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
● Do not apply oil to the CD player.
● Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
● Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.

● Do not insert more than one CD at a time.
Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 222

Selecting a folder

- Selecting folders one at a time
  Press (6) (\(\wedge\)) or (5) (\(\vee\)) to select the desired folder.

- Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder
  Press and hold (SCAN) until you hear a beep. The first ten seconds of the first file in each folder will be played. When the desired folder is reached, press the button once again.

- Returning to the first folder
  Press and hold (5) (\(\vee\)) until you hear a beep.
Selecting and scanning files

Selecting one file at a time

Turn \( \text{\textup{SEEK}} \) or press \( \text{\textup{\textasciitilde}} \) or \( \text{\textup{\textasciitilde}} \) on \( \text{\textup{SEEK/TRACK}} \) to select the desired file.

Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Press \( \text{\textup{SCAN}} \). The first ten seconds of each file will be played.

When the desired file is reached, press the button once again.

Repeat play

To repeat a file

Press \( \text{\textup{RPT}} \).

To repeat all of the files on a folder

Press and hold \( \text{\textup{RPT}} \) until you hear a beep.

Random playback

To play files from a particular folder in random order

Press \( \text{\textup{RAND}} \).

To play all of the files on a disc in random order

Press and hold \( \text{\textup{RAND}} \) until you hear a beep.

Switching the display

Press \( \text{\textup{TEXT}} \).

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the order of Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name.
3-2. Using the front audio system

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback
  Press (RAND), (RPT), or (SCAN) again.

■ When LOAD, ERROR or WAIT is shown on the display.
  LOAD: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the CD.
  ERROR: This indicates a trouble either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.
  WAIT: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press (DISC). Contact your Lexus dealer if the CD still cannot be played back.
  NO MUSIC: This indicates that the MP3/WMA file is not included in the CD.

■ Discs that can be used
  Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
  Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

■ CD player protection feature
  To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

■ If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods
  CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners
  Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.
MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format. Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media™ Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format. This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format. There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards and to the media/formats recorded by them that can be used.

MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  - MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  - MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  - MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  - MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  - MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
  - * Compatible with VBR
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  - WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  - 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  - Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  - Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
  - * Only compatible with 2-channel playback

Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs. Playback in some instances may not be possible, depending on the status of the CD-R or CD-RW. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.
3-2. Using the front audio system

- Compatible disc formats
  The following disc formats can be used.
  - Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
    CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
  - File formats: ISO9660 level 1, level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
    MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.
  - Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
  - Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
  - Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
  - Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names
  The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Multi-sessions
  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags
  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name, etc.
  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.
3-2. Using the front audio system

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

• To play MP3 file with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
• CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
• There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
• When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
• Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
3-2. Using the front audio system

**NOTICE**

**CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs, 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the CD player and render the CD insert/eject function unusable.

- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).
- Low-quality and deformed CDs.
- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.
NOTICE

CD player precautions
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.

- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.
3-2. Using the front audio system
Optimal use of the audio system

1 Displays the current mode.
2 Changes the following settings.
   • Sound quality and volume balance (→P. 237)
     The sound quality and balance setting can be changed to produce the best sound.
   • Automatic Sound Levelizer ON/OFF (→P. 237)
   • Listening position (→P. 238)
     The sound feel setting can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.
   • Rear system lock ON/OFF of rear seat entertainment system (→P. 238)

Using the AUDIO CONTROL function

■ Changing modes

Pressing selects the mode to be change in the following order.
BAS→MID→TRE→FAD→BAL→ASL→RSE→POS
3-2. Using the front audio system

■ Adjusting sound quality

Turning adjusts the level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound quality mode</th>
<th>Mode displayed</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Turn to the left</th>
<th>Turn to the right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bass*</td>
<td>BAS</td>
<td>-5 to 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-range*</td>
<td>MID</td>
<td>-5 to 5</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treble*</td>
<td>TRE</td>
<td>-5 to 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front/rear volume balance</td>
<td>FAD</td>
<td>F7 to R7</td>
<td>Shifts to rear</td>
<td>Shifts to front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left/right volume balance</td>
<td>BAL</td>
<td>L7 to R7</td>
<td>Shifts to left</td>
<td>Shifts to right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each AM·SAT·FM or CD mode.

■ Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

Turning to the right turns ON the ASL, and turning to the left turns OFF the ASL.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.
Changing the listening position

Turning changes the position in the following order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Listening position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRIVER</td>
<td>Position best suited to the driver’s seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRONT</td>
<td>Position best suited to the driver’s and front passenger seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR</td>
<td>Position best suited to the rear seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Position best suited to all seats</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rear system lock ON/OFF

Turn until ON/OFF is displayed, and press.

The rear system lock remains on, even when the engine switch is turned off.
Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.

1. Power on, select audio source
2. Volume
3. Radio: Select radio stations
   CD: Select tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

Turning on the power

Press \[ \text{on} \] when the audio system is turned OFF.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for a few seconds.

Changing the audio source

Press \[ \text{on} \] when the audio system is turned ON. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

FM1 → FM2 → CD changer → AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

Adjusting the volume

Press + on \[ \text{up} \] to increase the volume and - to decrease the volume.

Hold down the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.
Selecting a radio station

**STEP 1** Press to select the radio mode.

**STEP 2** Press or on the switch to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold the switch until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file

**STEP 1** Press to select the CD mode.

**STEP 2** Press or on to select the desired track/file.

Selecting a disc in the CD player

**STEP 1** Press to select the CD mode.

**STEP 2** Press and hold or on until a beep is heard.

⚠️ CAUTION

- **To reduce the risk of an accident**

  Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.
The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.

1. Front audio system
2. Display
3. Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks
4. DVD player
5. A/V input adapter
6. Power outlet
7. Rear seat entertainment system controller
8. Power outlet main switch
### Opening and closing the display

Press the lock release button to open the display.

Pull the display down to an easily viewable angle (between $90^\circ$ and $125^\circ$).

To close the display, press the display up until a click is heard to close the display.

The illumination of the screen is automatically turned off when the display is closed. However, the rear seat entertainment system is not turned off.

### Loading a disc

Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

The DISC indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and will repeat it after it reaches the end.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

**Ejecting a disc**

Press 🎧 and remove the disc.

**Headphone jacks**

1. To use the headphones, connect them to the jack.
2. To adjust the volume
   - Right side dial: Turn it toward the front of the vehicle to increase the volume. Turn it toward the rear of the vehicle to decrease the volume.
   - Left side dial: Turn it toward the rear of the vehicle to increase the volume. Turn it toward the front of the vehicle to decrease the volume.
■ The rear seat entertainment system can be used when
The engine switch is in the ACC or ON position.

■ Discs that can be used
Discs with the marks shown below can be used. Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

■ When ❌ appears on the screen
It indicates that the selected switch cannot work.

■ Rear system lock
→ P. 238
Error messages

DISC CHECK: Indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged or was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

REGION ERROR: Indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

DVD ERROR: Indicates that there is a problem inside the player. Eject the disc. Set the disc again. If the malfunction still exists, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Before using the remote control (for new vehicle owners)

An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being discharged. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.

- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.
CAUTION

■ While driving
  Do not use headphones.
  Doing so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the rear seat entertainment system is not used
  Keep the display closed.
  In the event of an accident or sudden braking, the opened display may hit an occupant’s body, resulting in injury.

■ To prevent accidents and electric shock
  Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

■ When the remote control is not used
  Stow the remote control.
  Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
3-3. Using the rear audio system
Using the DVD player (DVD video)

Remote control

1. Turning on the DVD mode
2. Selecting a chapter
3. Reversing a screen
4. Turning on the menu screen
5. Turning on the title selection screen
6. Searching the title
7. Changing the screen angle
8. Inputting the selected switch
9. Selecting a switch
10. Playing/pausing a screen
11. Fast forwarding a screen
12. Stopping a screen
13. Changing the subtitle language
14. Changing the audio language

Unit

1. Turning on the DVD mode
2. Skipping to the desired chapter
3. Playing/pausing a screen
4. Selecting a switch/inputting the selected switch
3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Display (Page 1)

1. Turning off the operation switches on the display
2. Displaying Page 2
3. Turning on or off the title selection screen for the disc
4. Turning on or off the menu screen for the disc
5. Reversing a screen
6. Stopping a screen
7. Pausing the disc/canceling the pause
8. Fast forwarding a screen

■ Display (Page 2)

9. Displaying to the initial setting screen
10. Displaying to Page 1
11. Search for a title
12. Returning to the previous screen
13. Changing the audio language
14. Changing the subtitle language
15. Changing the angle
3-3. Using the rear audio system

**NOTICE**

- **Cleaning the display**
  Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.
  If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

- **To prevent damage to the remote control**
  - Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, temperature heat and high humidity.
  - Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
  - Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

- **DVD player**
  Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

### Turning on or off the operation switches

Press  or  to turn on the operation switches.

Press  or  once again or select  to turn off the operation switches.

### Turning on the title selection screen

Press  or select  to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

### Turning on the menu screen

Press  or select  to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

**Returning to the previous screen**

Press [Return] to return to the previous screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

**Searching for a title**

Press [Search] or select [Search] to display the screen to search for a title.

Select the title number, and press ENT to input it.
Select [Back] to return to the previous screen.

**Changing the subtitle language**

Press [Sub Title] or select [Sub Title] to display the subtitle language screen.

Each time [Sub Title] is pressed or [Sub Title] is selected, another language stored on the disc is selected.
Select [Back] to return to the previous screen.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

## Changing the audio language

Press 🎧 or select Audio to display the audio language screen.

Each time 🎧 is pressed or Audio is selected, another language stored on the disc is selected.
Select Back to return to the previous screen.

## Changing the angle

Press 🎥 or select Angle to display the screen to change the angle.

Each time 🎥 is pressed or Angle is selected, the angle changes.
Select Back to return to the previous screen.

### DVD player and DVD video discs

This DVD player is compatible NTSC color TV formats. DVD video discs conforming to other formats such as PAL or SECAM cannot be used.

### Region codes

Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating where you can use them. If the DVD video disc is not labeled ALL or 1, you cannot use it in this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc in this player, REGION CODE ERROR appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, in some cases you cannot use it.
Marks shown on DVD video discs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NTSC</th>
<th>Indicates NTSC format of color TV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indicates the number of audio tracks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 : .</td>
<td>Indicates the number of language subtitles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : 3</td>
<td>Indicates the number of angles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>Indicates the screen to be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>Wide screen: 16:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Standard: 4:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☹️ ☹️</td>
<td>Indicates regions in which this video disc can be played.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☹️ ☹️</td>
<td>All: all countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☹️ ☹️</td>
<td>Number: region code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DVD video disc glossary

DVD video discs: Digital Versatile Discs that holds world's standard video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology has been adopted in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

Viewer restrictions: This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

- Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.
- Level 2 - 7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.
- Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
Multi-angle feature: Allows you to enjoy the same scene at different angles.

Multi-language feature: Allows you to select the language of the subtitles and audio.

Region codes: Region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player.

Audio: This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby digital, dts and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.

Title and chapter: Video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs are divided into sections by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one piece of a movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A unit smaller than a title. A title comprises multiple chapters.

Audio

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and Vol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works. 1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

“dts” is a trademark of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

Using the DVD player (video CD)

Remote control

1. Selecting a switch
2. Selecting a chapter
3. Playing/pausing a screen
4. Reversing a screen
5. Displaying operation switches
6. Inputting the selected switch
7. Fast forwarding a screen
8. Stopping a screen
9. Changing the initial setting

Unit

1. Skipping to the desired chapter
2. Playing/pausing a screen
3. Selecting a switch
4. Inputting the selected switch
Selecting a disc menu number

Select the disc menu number, and press ENT to input it. Select Back to return to the previous screen.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

**Using the DVD player (audio CD/CD text)**

Using the control screen, press [DVD] or [R] to display the control screen.

1. Repeat play
2. Random playback
3. Search playback

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan play

Select [RPT], [RAND] or [SCAN] again.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

Using the DVD player (MP3 discs)

Using the control screen

Press \[ DVD \] or \[ DVD \] to display the control screen.

1. Repeat play
2. Random playback
3. Search playback
4. Displaying file information
5. Selecting folder

Repeat play

■ Repeat a file
Select \[ RPT \].

■ Repeat all of files in a folder
Select \[ RPT \], and press and hold ENT on the remote control.

Random playback

■ Playing files from a particular folder in random order
Select \[ RAND \].

■ Playing all of the files on a disc in random order
Select \[ RAND \], and press and hold ENT on the remote control.

Search playback

■ Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder
Select \[ SCAN \].
The player will scan all the files in the folder. Each file will be played for 10 seconds.
■ Selecting the desired file by cueing the folders on the disc
Select \( \text{SCAN} \), and press and hold ENT the remote control. The player will scan all the folders on the disc. The first file in each folder will be played for 10 seconds.

■ Canceling random, repeat and play back
Select \( \text{RPT} \), \( \text{RAND} \) or \( \text{SCAN} \) again.
Using the video mode

Press \( \text{VIDEO} \) or \( \text{VIDEO} \) to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio machine to the input terminal adapter.

Using the adapter

Open the cover.

The A/V input adapter is composed of 3 input adapters.

Yellow: Image input adapter
White: Audio input adapter
Red: Audio input adapter

A/V input adapter

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer’s instructions.

Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect the audio device. (→P. 285)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**When the A/V input adapter is not in use**

Keep the A/V input adapter cover closed. Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or short circuit.
3-3. Using the rear audio system

Changing the initial setting

Press \( \text{SET UP} \) or select \( \text{Set Up} \) to display the initial setting screen.

The following initialization can be changed here.

- Audio language
- Subtitle language
- DVD language
- Angle mark
- Parental lock

Press \( \text{SET UP} \) or select \( \text{Set Up} \) to display the initial setting screen.

The following initialization can be changed here.

- Audio language
- Subtitle language
- DVD language
- Angle mark
- Parental lock

Changing the audio language

Select “Audio Language”. Select the language you want to hear, and press ENT to input it.

Select “Others” if you cannot find the language you want to hear. Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press ENT to input it.

Language code list (\( \rightarrow \) P. 265)
If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.
Changing the subtitle language

Select “Subtitle Language”. Select the language you want to read, and press ENT to input it.

Select “Others” if you cannot find the language you want to read. Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press ENT to input it.

Language code list (→ P. 265) If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.
### Changing the DVD language

Select “DVD Language”. Select the language you want to read and press ENT to input it.

Select “Others” if you cannot find the language you want to read. Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press ENT to input it.

**Language code list (→P. 265)**

If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.

### Turning on or off the angle mark

The angle mark can be turned on for discs that are multi-angle compatible.

Each time you press ENT when “Angle Mark” is selected, the angle mark turns on or off alternately.
Setting viewer restriction levels

Setting a password allows the viewer restriction to be effective.

Select “Parental Lock”.
Enter the password and press ENT.
The setting cannot be changed unless the password is entered.

When you forget the password, initialize the password. (→P. 265)

Select a restriction level (1-8), and press ENT. The smaller the level number, the stricter the age limit.

Setting the display mode

Pressing changes the display modes sequentially as follows:
Normal→Wide 1→Wide 2
3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Returning to the previous screen
Select Back, and press ENT.

■ To initialize the password
Press ▼ on the remote control or unit ten times when the screen to enter the personal code is displayed.

■ Language code list

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1001</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0514</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0618</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0405</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0920</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0519</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2608</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1412</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1620</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1922</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1821</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1115</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0512</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0101</td>
<td>Afar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0102</td>
<td>Abkhazian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0106</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0113</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0118</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0119</td>
<td>Assamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0125</td>
<td>Aymara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0126</td>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>Bashkir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0205</td>
<td>Byelorussian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0207</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0208</td>
<td>Bihari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0209</td>
<td>Bislama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0214</td>
<td>Bengali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0215</td>
<td>Tibetan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0218</td>
<td>Breton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0301</td>
<td>Catalan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0315</td>
<td>Corsican</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0319</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0325</td>
<td>Welsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0401</td>
<td>Danish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0426</td>
<td>Bhutani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0515</td>
<td>Esperanto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0520</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0521</td>
<td>Basque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0601</td>
<td>Persian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0609</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0610</td>
<td>Fiji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0615</td>
<td>Faroese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0625</td>
<td>Frisian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0701</td>
<td>Irish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0704</td>
<td>Scots-Gaelic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0712</td>
<td>Galician</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3-3. Using the rear audio system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0714</td>
<td>Guarani</td>
<td>1311</td>
<td>Macedonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0721</td>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>1312</td>
<td>Malayalam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0801</td>
<td>Hausa</td>
<td>1314</td>
<td>Mongolian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0809</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>1315</td>
<td>Moldavian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0818</td>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>1318</td>
<td>Marathi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1821</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>1319</td>
<td>Malay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1825</td>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>1320</td>
<td>Maltese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0901</td>
<td>Interlingua</td>
<td>1325</td>
<td>Burmese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0905</td>
<td>Interlingue</td>
<td>1401</td>
<td>Nauru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0911</td>
<td>Inupiak</td>
<td>1405</td>
<td>Nepali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0914</td>
<td>Indonesian</td>
<td>1415</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0919</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>1503</td>
<td>Occitan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0923</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>1513</td>
<td>(Afan) Oromo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1009</td>
<td>Yiddish</td>
<td>1518</td>
<td>Oriya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1023</td>
<td>Javanese</td>
<td>1601</td>
<td>Punjabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101</td>
<td>Georgian</td>
<td>1612</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1111</td>
<td>Kazakh</td>
<td>1619</td>
<td>Pashto, Pushto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1112</td>
<td>Greenlandic</td>
<td>1721</td>
<td>Quechua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1113</td>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>1813</td>
<td>Rhaeto-Romance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1114</td>
<td>Kannada</td>
<td>1814</td>
<td>Kirundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1119</td>
<td>Kashmiri</td>
<td>1815</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1121</td>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>1823</td>
<td>Kinyarwanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1125</td>
<td>Kirghiz</td>
<td>1901</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1201</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>1904</td>
<td>Sindhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1214</td>
<td>Lingala</td>
<td>1907</td>
<td>Sangho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1215</td>
<td>Laothian</td>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1220</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
<td>1909</td>
<td>Sinhalese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1222</td>
<td>Latvian</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Slovak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1307</td>
<td>Malagasy</td>
<td>1912</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1309</td>
<td>Maori</td>
<td>1913</td>
<td>Samoan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Adjusting the screen

Press \( \text{DISPLAY} \). Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments. Press \( \text{DISPLAY} \) or ENT to input it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1914</td>
<td>Shona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Somali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1917</td>
<td>Albanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Serbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1919</td>
<td>Siswati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Sesotho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1921</td>
<td>Sundanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1923</td>
<td>Swahili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Tamil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Telugu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Tajik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Tigrinya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Turkmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Tagalog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Setswana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Tonga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019</td>
<td>Tsonga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2020</td>
<td>Tatar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2023</td>
<td>Twi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2111</td>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2118</td>
<td>Urdu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2126</td>
<td>Uzbek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2209</td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2215</td>
<td>Volapük</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2315</td>
<td>Wolof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2408</td>
<td>Xhosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2515</td>
<td>Yoruba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2621</td>
<td>Zulu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Adjusting the screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>+ or Green</th>
<th>- or Red</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>Brightens</td>
<td>Darkens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Strengthens the contrast</td>
<td>Weakens the contrast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tone</td>
<td>Strengthens the tone</td>
<td>Weakens the tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Strengthens the green color</td>
<td>Strengthens the red color</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list

1. Meter ring light
2. Engine switch light
3. Front overhead courtesy lights
4. Front interior light (→ P. 271)
5. Front personal lights (→ P. 272)
6. Rear interior light
7. Front door courtesy lighting
8. Inside door handle lights (if equipped)
9. Scuff lighting (if equipped)
10. Foot well lighting (if equipped)

Turning the instrument panel light control knob fully to the left disables the foot well lighting.
■ Illuminated entry system

The following lights turn on when any of the doors are unlocked or opened. (The lights remain on for approximately 15 seconds when the doors are unlocked, but the lights turn off immediately if the doors are locked.)

- Foot well lighting
- Engine switch light
- Front interior light (interior light switch is in the DOOR position)
- Rear interior light (interior light switch is in the DOOR position)
- Inside door handle lights
- Scuff lighting

The following lights turn on for approximately 15 seconds when the engine switch is turned to the LOCK position from the ON or ACC position. (The lights turn off immediately if the engine switch is turned to the ACC or ON position.)

- Engine switch light
- Front interior light (interior light switch is in the DOOR position)
- Rear interior light (interior light switch is in the DOOR position)
- Scuff lighting

The following lights turn on when the engine switch is in the ON position. (The lights dim when the shift lever is moved out of the P position. The lights remain on for approximately 15 seconds after turning the engine switch to the LOCK position from the ON or ACC position.)

- Inside door handle lights
- Foot well lighting

The front overhead courtesy light turns on when the engine switch is in the ACC or ON position.
To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the following lights remain ON when the door is not fully closed and the interior light switch is in the DOOR position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

- Engine switch light
- Front interior light
- Rear interior light
- Inside door handle lights
- Scuff lighting
- Foot well lighting

Customization

Setting (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (→P. 453) Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.
3-4. Using the interior lights

### Interior lights

#### Front (models with an electric moon roof)

1. Door position ON
2. ON
3. OFF

#### Front (models without an electric moon roof)

#### Rear
3-4. Using the interior lights

**Personal lights**

- **ON/OFF**

- **Models with an electric moon roof**

- **Models without an electric moon roof**
3-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features

1. Overhead console
2. Glove box
3. Door pockets
4. Console boxes
5. Cup holders

Glove box

1. Unlock with the key
2. Lock with the key
3. Open (pull lever)
3-5. Using the storage features

Glove box and console boxes

■ Glove box light
The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are turned on.

■ Power back door main switch
The power back door main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 33)

⚠️ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving
Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console boxes

■ Using the console box

Front
1 Open
2 Close

Rear (if equipped)
1 Pull up the knob to release the lock.
2 Lift the armrest to open.
Adjusting the position of the console box (front)

1. Open the cup holder lid on the console box.
2. Adjust the position of the box while lifting the lock release lever.

CAUTION

- Console box adjustment precaution
  - Do not adjust the position of the console box while the vehicle is moving. This may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and may lead to an accident that results in death or serious injury.
  - Be careful not to get hands or feet pinched between the front console box and the center panel or rear seat.
  - Be careful not to allow the front console box to hit any passengers while adjusting its position.
  - After adjusting the console box, make sure it is securely locked in position.

Removing the adapter tray

Pull up.

Console box light (front)

The console box light turn on when the tail lights are turned on.
CAUTION

- Caution while driving
  Keep the console box closed.
  Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Overhead console

The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

CAUTION

- Items that should not be left in the overhead console
  Do not leave glasses or lighters in the console.
  If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or become cracked.

- Caution while driving
  Do not leave the overhead console open while driving.
  Items may fall out and cause injury.

- Maximum storage weight
  Do not place any object heavier than 0.22 lb. (100 g) in it.
  The console may be opened and cause injury.
Cup holders

► Front (type A)
To open, press in and release the front cup holder.

► Front (type B-1)
To open, press down and release the rear of the cup holder lid.

► Front (type B-2)
To open, press down and release the rear of the cup holder lid.

► Rear
To open, press down the button on the armrest.
3-5. Using the storage features

Cup holders and door pockets

- Cup holder light (front-type B)
  The cup holder light turn on when the tail lights are turned on.
- Removing the separate tray (front-type B-2)

  Pull up.

---

## CAUTION

- Items unsuitable for the cup holder
  Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

- When not in use
  Keep the cup holders closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

---

Door pockets

The door pocket can be opened and closed.
3-5. Using the storage features

Door pockets

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
Sun visors

1 Forward position:
   Flip down.

2 Side position:
   Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.

   At this position, the visors can be slid backward.
3-6. Other interior features

Vanity mirror

1. Open
   The light turns on when the cover is opened.

2. Adjust the brightness of the light
3-6. Other interior features

Clock

- The clock is displayed when
  The engine switch is in the ACC or ON position.

1 Adjusts the hour.
2 Adjusts the minutes.
3 Rounds to the nearest hour.*
   *: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
      1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00
Outside temperature display

1 Displays the outside air temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -22°F (-30°C) to 122°F (50°C).

If the temperature does not appear or it shows

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
3-6. Other interior features

Multi-display light control

Adjusts the brightness of the light

Push and release the button until the desired brightness is obtained.
3-6. Other interior features

Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for a following component.

12 V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A.
115 VAC: Audio devices that use less than 100 W.

- On center cluster (12 V)
- Tray under the front console box (12 V)
- Luggage compartment (12 V)
3-6. Other interior features

- **Luggage compartment (115 VAC)**

  1 Main switch
  To use the power outlet, turn on the main switch.

  2 Power outlet socket

*: If equipped

- The power outlet can be used when
  - **12 V**
    - The engine switch is in the ACC or ON position.
  - **115 VAC**
    - The engine switch is in the ON position.

- **NOTICE**

  - **To avoid damaging the power outlet**
    Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
    Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

  - **To prevent the fuse from being blown**
    - **12 V**
      - Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.
    - **115 VAC**
      - Do not use a 115 VAC appliance that requires more than 100 W.
      - If a 115 VAC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.
3-6. Other interior features

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged
  Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ Appliances that may not operate properly (115 VAC)
  The following 115 VAC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W.
  ● Appliances with high initial peak wattage
  ● Measuring devices that process precise data
  ● Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply
3-6. Other interior features
Seat heaters (if equipped)

![Diagram of seat heaters]

1. Pops the switch out
2. ON
   - The indicator light comes on.
3. Adjusts the seat temperature
   - The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat becomes.

- The seat heaters can be used when
  - The engine switch is in the ON position.

- When not in use
  - Turn the knob counterclockwise. The indicator light turns off.
  - Press the knob into the recessed position.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Burns
  - Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
    - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
    - Persons with sensitive skin
    - Persons who are fatigued
    - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
  - Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
    - Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
3-6. Other interior features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ■ To prevent seat heater damage  
  Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat. |
| ■ To prevent battery discharge  
  Turn the switches off when the engine is not running. |
3-6. Other interior features

Armrest

■ Front

Pull the armrest down for use.

■ Rear

Pull the armrest down for use.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.
3-6. Other interior features

Floor mat

**Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.**

Secure the driver’s floor mat using the hooks provided.

---

**CAUTION**

- **When inserting the floor mat**
  
  Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.
3-6. Other interior features

Luggage compartment features

- **Cargo hooks**
  
  Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

- **Auxiliary box**
  
  To lift the luggage mat up, press down the button.
  
  An auxiliary box is under the luggage mat.

- **Shopping bag hooks**
### Step 1
Attach the hooks to the head restraints.

### Step 2
Pull out the luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.

---

#### Removing luggage cover

1. Push
2. Lift up

After removing the luggage cover, stow it in the auxiliary box or place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment.
3-6. Other interior features

**Automatic retract function of luggage cover**

The knob is in the active position, the luggage cover is retracted automatically when the back door is opened.

1. Active position
2. Inactive position

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>When the cargo hooks are not in use</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shopping bag hook weight capacity</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not hang any object heavier than 4 lb. (2 kg) on shopping bag hooks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

### Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.

1. **Buttons**
2. **Indicator**

#### Programming the HomeLink®

**STEP 1**

Point the remote control for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® control buttons.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.
Press and hold down one of the buttons on the HomeLink® and the button on the transmitter. When the indicator light on the HomeLink® changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.

Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button.

If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the Rolling Code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink®) flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the Rolling Code type, proceed to the heading “Programming a rolling code system”.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.
Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading “Programming the HomeLink®” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

STEP 2 Press the training button.

STEP 3 Press and release the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink® button twice. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® transceiver and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device’s remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is complete.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver start to flashing rapidly, release the buttons.
STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ Programming other devices
To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ Reprogramming a button
The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Programming the HomeLink®” instructions.

Operating the HomeLink®
Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light on the HomeLink® transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink® continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)
Press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.
Before programming
  ● Install a new battery in the transmitter.
  ● The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

Certification for the garage door opener
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the device.

CAUTION

When programming a garage door or other remote control device
The garage door may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

Conforming to federal safety standards
Do not use the HomeLink® Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.
3-6. Other interior features
Compass

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

Operation

To turn the compass on or off, press the switch.

Displays and directions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>Northeast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>Southeast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>South</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SW</td>
<td>Southwest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NW</td>
<td>Northwest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calibrating the compass

The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth’s magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.
To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

■ Deviation calibration

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.

**STEP 2** Press the switch until a number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

**STEP 3** Press the switch, and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.
If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.
■ Circling calibration

When C appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

● The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
● The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
● The vehicle is in a place where the earth’s magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
● The vehicle has become magnetized.
   (There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
● The battery has been disconnected.
● A door is open.
### CAUTION

- **While driving the vehicle**
  
  Do not adjust the display. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

- **When doing the circling calibration**
  
  Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

### NOTICE

- **To avoid the compass malfunctions**
  
  Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

- **To ensure normal operation of the compass**
  
  - Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
  
  - During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.
3.6. Other interior features
4-1. Maintenance and care............................... 306
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior........... 306
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior .......... 309

4-2. Maintenance ................... 312
Maintenance requirements............................... 312
General maintenance .................................. 314
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs...... 317

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance ................ 318
Do-it-yourself service precautions...................... 318
Hood ................................................................ 321
Positioning the jack .................................... 322
Engine compartment .................................. 324
Tires ................................................................ 338
Tire inflation pressure ................................ 346
Wheels ....................................................... 350
Air conditioning filter .................................. 352
Wireless remote control battery ....................... 355

Rear seat entertainment system controller ............... 357
Checking and replacing fuses ............................. 359
Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights) .... 371
Light bulbs .................................................. 372
Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
  Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.
■ Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors back.
  - Remove the antenna.
  - Turn the power back door system off.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle’s paint.

■ High pressure automatic car washes

Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows and the air suspension unit (if equipped). Before entering an automatic car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ To prevent deterioration and corrosion

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
CAUTION

■ Caution about the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot. When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To protect your vehicle’s painted surfaces

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

■ If the windshield washer nozzle become blocked

Contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. This may damage the nozzle.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

○ Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

○ Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to the off position. If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.
4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle’s interior and keep it in top condition:

- **Protecting the vehicle interior**
  Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

- **Cleaning the leather areas**
  - Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
  - Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
    
    Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
  - Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
  - Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in shaded and ventilated area.

- **Synthetic leather areas**
  - Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
  - Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
  - Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.
■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with luke-warm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle’s interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. The excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>■ Water in the vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Be careful not to splash or spill liquid on the floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>● Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.78) Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**NOTICE**

- **Cleaning detergents**
  Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.

- **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**
  Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.
  - Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
  - Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
  - Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

- **Water on the floor**
  Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
  Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

- **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**
  Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.
To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner’s responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

- **General maintenance**
  Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

- **Scheduled maintenance**
  Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

  For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.

- **Do-it-yourself maintenance**
  You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

  The use of Lexus Repair Manuals is recommended.

  For details about warranty coverage, see the separate “Owner’s Guide”, “Warranty and Services Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Warranty Booklet”.

- **Repair and replacement**
  It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.
- Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer
  - Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
  - Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- **Warning in handling of battery**
  - Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
  - Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
  - Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 334)
  - Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.
Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Services Guide” or “Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

### Engine compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>Maintenance-free.  (→P. 334)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>At the correct level?  (→P. 331)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
<td>At the correct level?  (→P. 330)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>At the correct level?  (→P. 326)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust system</td>
<td>No fumes or strange sounds?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>At the correct level?  (→P. 333)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiator/condenser/hoses</td>
<td>Not blocked with foreign matter?  (→P. 331)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>At the correct level?  (→P. 337)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Vehicle interior

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accelerator pedal</td>
<td>• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission “Park” mechanism</td>
<td>• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in P?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake pedal</td>
<td>• Moves smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>• Not pull to one side when applied?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>• Loss of brake effectiveness?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>• Spongy feeling brake pedal?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td>• Pedal almost touches floor?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head restraints</td>
<td>• Move smoothly and lock securely?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicators/buzzers</td>
<td>• Function properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lights</td>
<td>• Do all the lights come on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lights</td>
<td>• Headlights aimed correctly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(→P. 371)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>• Moves smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>• Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts</td>
<td>• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>• Are the belts undamaged?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>• Do the seat controls operate properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>Check points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel</td>
<td>• Moves smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Has correct free play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• No strange noises?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vehicle exterior**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Check points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Door</td>
<td>• Operate smoothly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine hood</td>
<td>• The lock system works properly?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid leaks</td>
<td>• Is there any leakage after parking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire</td>
<td>• Inflation pressure is correct?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tire surfaces not worn or damaged?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Wheel nuts are not loose?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- **If the engine is running**
  
  Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.
Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

- **If the electronic engine control system warning light comes on**
  The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

- **Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:**
  - When the battery is disconnected or discharged
    Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.
  - When the fuel tank cap is loose
    The electronic engine control system warning light comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

- **When the electronic engine control system warning light goes off after several driving trips**
  The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

- **If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test**
  Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.
If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Parts and tools</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Battery condition (→P. 334) | • Warm water  
• Baking soda  
• Grease  
• Conventional wrench  
(for terminal clamp bolts) |
| Brake fluid level (→P. 331) | • FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid  
• Rag or paper towel  
• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid) |
| Engine coolant level (→P. 330) | • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.  
For the U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.  
For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.  
• Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Parts and tools</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Engine oil level (→P. 326)    | • “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent  
|                               | • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)                   |
| Fuses (→P. 359)               | • Fuse with same amperage rating as original                                    |
| Headlight aim (→P. 371)       | • Phillips-head screwdriver                                                     |
| Power steering fluid level (→P. 333) | • Automatic transmission fluid  
|                               | DEXRON®II or III  
|                               | • Rag or paper towel  
|                               | • Clean funnel                                                                  |
| Radiator and condenser (→P. 331) | —                                                                               |
| Tire inflation pressure (→P. 346) | • Tire pressure gauge  
|                               | • Compressed air source                                                         |
| Washer fluid (→P. 337)        | • Water washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use)  
<p>|                               | • Funnel                                                                       |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury:

**When working on the engine compartment**
- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

**When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille**
Be sure the ignition is off.
With the ignition on, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→ P. 331)

**Safety glasses**
Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**If you remove the air cleaner:**
Driving with the air filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.
Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

**STEP 1**
Pull the hood release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.

**STEP 2**
Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

**CAUTION**

**Pre-driving check**
Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.
When raising your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

► Front

► Rear (2WD models)

► Rear (4WD models)
**CAUTION**

When raising your vehicle:

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury.

- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the jack.
  - Always use automotive jack stands or a solid, level, surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in P.
- Make sure to set the jack properly at the jack point.
  - Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension:
  - Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function. (→P.174)
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine compartment

1. Power steering fluid reservoir (→P. 333)
2. Engine oil filler cap (→P. 326)
3. Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 326)
4. Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 331)
5. Fuse box (→P. 359)
6. Battery (→P. 334)
7. Radiator (→P. 331)
8. Condenser (→P. 331)
9. Electric cooling fans
10. Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 330)
11. Washer fluid tank (→P. 337)
### Engine compartment cover

#### Removing the engine compartment cover

![Image of engine compartment cover removal](image)

#### Installing the clips

1. Open
2. Insert
3. Press

![Image of clip installation](image)
Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

**STEP 2** Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

**STEP 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.

**STEP 4** Reinsert the dipstick fully.

**STEP 5** Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

**STEP 6** Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

1 Low

2 Full
- Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil grade</th>
<th>ILSAC multi-grade engine oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>Clean funnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STEP 1** Remove the oil filler cap.

**STEP 2** Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

**STEP 3** Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

It takes about 1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 lmp. qt.) to raise the oil level from low to full on the dipstick.

- Recommended viscosity

SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 5W-30 oil is not available, SAE 10W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.
How to read oil container labels
Some oil containers are labeled with ILSAC certification marks that help you to select the proper oil.

![ILSAC Certification Mark](image)

Engine oil consumption
- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If you consume more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)
The oil change system should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

**STEP 1**  Switch the display to the odometer. (→P. 128)

**STEP 2**  Turn the engine switch to the LOCK position.

**STEP 3**  While pressing the trip meter reset button, turn the engine switch to the ON position. Continue to press and hold the button until the trip meter displays 000000.
## CAUTION

**Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.

- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.

- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

## NOTICE

**To prevent serious engine damage:**
Check the oil level on regular basis.

**When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly retightened.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the FULL and LOW lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

1. Reservoir cap
2. Full
3. Low

If the level is on or below the LOW line, add coolant up to the FULL line.

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

Coolant selection

Only use Toyota Super Long Life Coolant or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: Toyota Super Long Life Coolant is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: Toyota Super Long Life Coolant is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

When the engine is hot

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.
331

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

**NOTICE**

■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damaging parts or paint.

**Radiator and condenser**

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects. If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

**CAUTION**

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

**Brake fluid**

■ Checking fluid level

The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.
### Adding fluid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid type</th>
<th>FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>Clean funnel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

![CAUTION]

#### When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

- If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.
- If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

![NOTICE]

#### If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

- If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.
Power steering fluid

Fluid level
The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.

1. Full (when cold)
2. Add fluid (when cold)
3. Full (when hot)
4. Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: Vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C])

Cold: Engine has not been run for about five hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C])

Checking the fluid level
Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid type</th>
<th>Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Items</td>
<td>Rag or paper, Clean funnel (only for adding fluid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
2. Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Wipe the dipstick clean.
4. Reinstall and remove the reservoir cap again.
5. Check the fluid level.
CAUTION

■ When checking the reservoir
Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.

NOTICE

■ When adding fluid
Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

■ After replacing the reservoir cap
Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

■ Battery exterior
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp
### Checking battery condition
Check the battery condition using the indicator color.

#### Type A

1. Blue: Good condition
2. White: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
3. Red: Not working properly, have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

#### Type B

1. Green: Good condition
2. Dark: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
3. Clear or light yellow: Not working properly, have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

### Before recharging
When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.
CAUTION

Chemicals in the battery:
A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safety charge the battery
Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

How to recharge the battery
Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.

- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.

- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.
**Washer fluid**

If any washer does not work or the low washer fluid warning light comes on, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

**NOTICE**

- **Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid**
  
  Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

- **Diluting washer fluid**
  
  Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

---

**NOTICE**

- **When recharging the battery**
  
  Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.
Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

**Checking tires**

1. New tread
2. Treadwear indicator
3. Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “Δ” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

**Tire rotation**

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

**The tire pressure warning system**

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 400)
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 340)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

- The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:
  - When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.
  - When changing the tire size.

  When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

- How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

  **STEP 1** Park the vehicle in safe place and turn off the engine.
  
  While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

  **STEP 2** Adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 436)
  
  Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

  **STEP 3** Turn the engine switch to the ON position.
Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly three times.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the engine switch is in the ON position, and turn the engine switch to the OFF position.

**Registering and selecting ID codes**

- **Registering ID codes**
  2 sets of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes can be registered. Once a second set of tires is registered at “2nd”, you can switch between tire set settings simply by pressing the tire pressure warning select switch.

There are 2 settings:

- “MAIN” position: The ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter on the tires originally installed on the vehicle is registered.
- “2nd” position: The ID code is not registered. When you replace a new set of tires, purchase tire pressure warning valves and transmitters from your Lexus dealer and have the new ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.
Selecting ID codes
When replacing tires, make sure to select the ID code set that matches the new tire set. If the tire pressure select switch is set to the wrong tire setting, the tire pressure warning system will not operate properly. After about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

When to replace your vehicle’s tires
Tires should be replaced if:
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage
If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

Replacing tires and wheels
If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

Tire life
Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires
The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.
Maximum load of tire
Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.
As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 346, 442).

Tire types
1 Summer tires
   Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires
   All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires
   For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 188)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system
Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally
If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.
■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed
Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times.
● After driving for a certain period of time since the initialization has been completed, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks
The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

► For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

● Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
● Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
● Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
● Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

![CAUTION]

When inspecting or replacing tires
Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
- Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

When initializing the tire pressure warning system
Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

345

Maintenance and care

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle’s wheels and body.

■ If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tire inflation pressure

■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 436)
347

4.3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

- **Inspection and adjustment procedure**

  1. Remove the tire valve cap.
  2. Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.
  3. Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.
  4. If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust inflate the tire.
     If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.
  5. After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.
  6. Reinstall the tire valve cap.

- **Tire inflation pressure check interval**

  You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.
Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.

- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.

- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.

- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.
CAUTION

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance
Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure
Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps. Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.
If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

- **Wheel selection**

  When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset. Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

  Lexus does not recommend using:

  - Wheels of different sizes or types
  - Used wheels
  - Bent wheels that have been straightened

- **Aluminum wheel precautions**

  - Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.

  - When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).

  - Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.

  - Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

- **When replacing wheels**

  The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be switched over from the old wheels. (→P. 339)
| CAUTION |
|———|
| **When replacing wheels** |
| ● Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner’s Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control. |
| ● Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing serious injury or death. |

| NOTICE |
|———|
| **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters** |
| ● Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer. |
| ● Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels. |
The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

**Removal method**

**STEP 1** Turn the engine switch to the LOCK position.

**STEP 2** Open the glove box.
Remove the 2 pins installed on the upper part of the glove box and lower the glove box.

**STEP 3** Remove the filter case.
■ Checking interval
Inspect, clean and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, more frequent cleaning or early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Warranty and Service Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/ Scheduled Maintenance”.)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically
The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ Cleaning method
If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.
Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm² or bar).
If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

■ Replacement method
Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.
The ↑UP marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.
**NOTICE**

**To prevent damage to the system**
- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.
Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

You will need the following items:

- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR2016)

Replacing the battery

**STEP 1**
Remove the screw and cover.
Push the cover in the arrow direction.

**STEP 2**
Remove the module.

**STEP 3**
Open the case cover and remove the depleted battery.
Insert a new battery with the + terminal facing up.
If the battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur.

● The wireless remote control will not function properly.
● The operational range is reduced.

Use a CR2016 lithium battery

● Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
● Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
● Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

---

**CAUTION**

- Removed battery and other parts

  Keep away from children.
  These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

---

**NOTICE**

- For normal operation after replacing the battery

  Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

  ● Always work with dry hands.
    Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
  ● Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
  ● Do not bend either of the battery terminals.
Replace the batteries with new ones if they are discharged.

- **Necessary item for replacing:**
  - 3 AA batteries

- **Replacing the batteries**

  **STEP 1**
  Remove the cover.

  **STEP 2**
  Remove the depleted batteries and install the new ones.

- **If the batteries are discharged**
  The following symptoms may occur.
  - The rear seat entertainment system control will not function properly.
  - The operational range is reduced.

- **When using 3 AA batteries**
  - Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, electric appliance shop, or camera stores.
  - Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
  - Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.
### CAUTION

- **Removed battery and other parts**
  
  Keep away from children.
  These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

### NOTICE

- **For normal operation after replacing the battery**
  
  Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
  
  - Always work with dry hands.
    - Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
  
  - Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
  
  - Do not bend either of the battery terminals.
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

**STEP 1** Turn the engine switch to the LOCK position.

**STEP 2** Open the fuse box cover.

- Engine compartment
  Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

- Driver’s side instrument panel
  Remove the lid.

**STEP 3** After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 361) for details about which fuse to check.

**STEP 4** Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.
**STEP 5** Check if the fuse has blown.

- **Type A**
  1. Normal fuse
  2. Blown fuse

  Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

- **Type B and C**
  1. Type B
  2. Type C
  3. Normal fuse
  4. Blown fuse

  Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.
### Fuse layout and amperage ratings

#### Engine compartment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AIRSUS*1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Electronically modulated air suspension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>HEATER, TAIL, PANEL, FR FOG, CIG, RADIO NO. 2, ECU-ACC, PWR OUTLET NO. 1, GAUGE NO. 1, ECU-IG NO. 1, FR WIP, RR WIP, WASHER, SEAT HTR, ECU-IG NO. 2, P/SEAT, PWR, TI&amp;TE, RR DOOR LH, RR DOOR RH, MPX-B, AM1, DOOR NO.2, STOP, OBD, FUEL OPN, AIRSUS (7.5 A), S/ROOF, FR DEF, RR FOG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: With electronically modulated air suspension

*2: Without electronically modulated air suspension
### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>PBD</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>H-LP CLN/MSB*¹</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H-LP CLN*²</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ABS NO.1</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>RR DEF</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>HEATER</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>DRL/WIP-S</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>H-LP L LWR</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>H-LP L UPR</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>H-LP R UPR</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*¹: With electronically modulated air suspension  
*²: Without electronically modulated air suspension
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 TOWING</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Trailer lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 CRT</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 ABS NO. 2</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 RDI FAN</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Electric cooling fans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 HAZ</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Turn signal lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 A/F</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 ALT-S</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Charging system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 ETCS</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 HORN</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Horns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 MAIN</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Daytime running light system, left-hand headlight, right-hand headlight, H-LP R LWR, H-LP R UPR, H-LP L UPR, H-LP L LWR, DRL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 AM2</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Starting system, GAUGE NO. 2, IGN, IG2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 RADIO NO. 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Audio system, navigation system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>ECU-B</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>DOME</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>AMP</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>DOOR NO.1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>INJ</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>EFI NO.1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Right-hand headlight (low beam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Driver’s side instrument panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere</th>
<th>Circuit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RR DOOR RH</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RR DOOR LH</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>FUEL OPN</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>FR FOG</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>OBD</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>FR DEF</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>STOP</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>TI&amp;TE</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>MPX-B</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>AM1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>RR FOG</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>AIR SUS</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>DOOR NO. 2</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>S/ROOF</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>TAIL</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>PANEL</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>ECU-IG NO.1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>ECU-IG NO. 2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>HEATER</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>WASHER</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>SEAT HTR</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>GAUGE NO1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>FR WIP</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse</td>
<td>Ampere</td>
<td>Circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 RR WIP</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rear window wiper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 IG2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 IGN</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>SRS airbag system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, front passenger occupant classification system, stop lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 GAUGE NO. 2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Gauge and meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 ECU-ACC</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Navigation system display, power rear view mirror control, shift lock control system, multiplex communication system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 CIG</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cigarette lighter, power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 PWR OUTLET NO. 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Power outlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 RADIO NO. 2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, navigation system, audio system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 MIR HTR</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Outside rear view mirror defogger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 P/SEAT</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Power seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 PWR</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Power window, multiplex communication system (power door lock system, wireless remote control system), outside rear view mirror</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
■ After a fuse is replaced

● If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→ P. 372)
● If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

⚠️ CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

● Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.

● Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix. This can cause extensive damage or even fire.

● Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Headlight aim (vehicles with discharge headlights)

■ Vertical movement adjusting screw and bolt

1. Adjust the screw in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver.
   Remember the turning direction and the number of turns in mind.

2. Turn the bolt the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.
   If the error is over the value specified above, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim.

■ Before checking the headlight aim

STEP 1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.
STEP 2 Park the vehicle on level ground.
STEP 3 Sit in the driver’s seat.
STEP 4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

■ Adjusting the headlight aim
You may replace the following bulbs yourself. For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Prepare a replacement light bulb.
  Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 438)

■ Remove the engine compartment cover.
  →P. 325

■ Turn the power back door main switch OFF.
  →P. 33

■ Front bulb locations

- Parking light
- Front turn signal light
- Front side marker light
- Headlight high beam (halogen bulb)
- Headlight low beam (halogen bulb)
- Fog light
■ Rear bulb locations

- Tail light
- Back-up light
- License plate light
- Rear turn signal light
- Rear side marker light

■ Replacing light bulbs

■ Headlight high beam (halogen bulb)

**STEP 1**
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

**STEP 2**
Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.
### Headlight low beam (halogen bulb)

**STEP 1**
Turn the cover counterclockwise.

**STEP 2**
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

**STEP 3**
Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

### Front turn signal lights

**STEP 1**
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Maintenance and care

Remove the light bulb.

■ Front side marker lights

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

■ Rear side marker lights

Right-hand side only:
Remove the bolts using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the clips.
1 Removing clip
2 Installing clip

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

Remove the light bulb.

Parking lights

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Maintenance and care

---

**Fog lights**

- **STEP 1**: Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.
- **STEP 2**: Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.
- **STEP 2**: Remove the light bulb.

There are access holes for the fog lights.
■ Rear turn signal and tail lights

**STEP 1**

Remove the access hole cover.

Use a flathead screwdriver which is wrapped with a cloth.

**STEP 2**

1. Tail light
2. Rear turn signal light

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

**STEP 3**

Remove the light bulb.

■ Tail and back-up lights

**STEP 1**

Open the back door and remove the luggage compartment light unit.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

**Maintenance and care**

**STEP 2** Pull out the connector.

**STEP 3** Remove the upper trim board.

**STEP 4** Remove the lower trim board.

**STEP 5**

1. Tail light
2. Back-up light

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

License plate lights

STEP 1
Open the back door and remove the luggage compartment light unit.

STEP 2
Pull out the connector.

STEP 3
Remove the upper trim board.

STEP 6
Remove the light bulb.
Turn the bulb base counterclock-wise.

Remove the light bulb.

- Bulbs other than the above
  If any of the bulbs listed below has burnt out, have your Lexus dealer replace it.
  - Headlight low beams (discharge bulbs)
  - Stop lights
  - High mounted stoplight
■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ LED stop lights

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced. If two or more LEDs in a stop light burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (SAE).
## CAUTION

### Replacing light bulbs
- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights. The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion. If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components. Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

### Discharge headlights
- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight’s high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on. An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.

### To prevent damage or fire
- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
When trouble arises

5

5-1. Essential information .... 386
   If your vehicle needs to be
towed ........................................ 386
   If you think something is
wrong................................. 393
Fuel pump shut off
   system............................... 394
   Event data recorder .......... 395

5-2. Steps to take in an
   emergency .................. 397
   If a warning light turns on
or a warning buzzer
   sounds................................ 397
   If you have a flat tire......... 408
   If the engine will not start ..... 418
   If the shift lever cannot be
shifted from P .................... 419
   If you lose your keys .......... 420
   If the vehicle battery is
   discharged......................... 421
   If your vehicle overheats .... 424
   If the vehicle becomes
   stuck.................................. 426
Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle’s wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.
5-1. Essential information

- Emergency towing procedure
  
  **STEP 1**  Release the parking brake.
  
  **STEP 2**  Shift the shift lever to N.
  
  **STEP 3**  Turn the engine switch to the ACC (engine off) or ON (engine running) position.

---

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- Caution while towing
  - Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
    Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains.
  - If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

---

⚠️ **NOTICE**

- To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission
  - Never tow this vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.
Installing towing eyelets

STEP 1
Remove the eyelet cover.

STEP 2
Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.

STEP 3
Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

Location of the emergency towing eyelet
→ P. 408
5-1. Essential information

**CAUTION**

- **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**
  Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely. If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

**Towing with a sling-type truck**

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent body damage**
  Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.
Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From the front (2WD models)  
Release the parking brake.

▶ From the front (4WD models)  
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheel.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the vehicle  
When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission (4WD models)  
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.
From rear

Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

**NOTICE**

- **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**
  Never tow this vehicle from the rear with the front wheels on the ground.

Using a flat bed truck

If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.

If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.
Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.
NOTICE

To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not use the rear emergency towing eyelets.
If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

**Visible symptoms**
- Fluid leaks under the vehicle  
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

**Audible symptoms**
- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

**Operational symptoms**
- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor
To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the ACC to LOCK position.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.
When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is an event data recorder (EDR) that records data in a crash or a near car crash event.

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- Front passenger's occupant classification
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data

If your vehicle is equipped with a vehicle stability control (VSC) system

The VSC Electronic Control Unit (ECU) may contain another EDR. In case the VSC or Brake Assist system is activated, or the lateral acceleration is beyond a certain value, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Behavior of the vehicle
5-1. Essential information

- Steering wheel angle
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- To what extent the brake pedal was applied
- To what extent the ECU controlled the condition of the 4 wheels
- Vehicle stability control system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

### Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle’s owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court law

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![BRAKE](U.S.A.) | Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*  
• Low brake fluid  
• Malfunction in the brake booster system  
This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. |
| ![注意](Canada) |  |

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) or more.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Charging system warning light](image) | Charging system warning light  
Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle’s charging system. |
| ![Low engine oil pressure warning light](image) | Low engine oil pressure warning light  
Indicates an abnormal level of engine oil pressure.  
This warning light may turn on if the level of engine oil declines. The light should turn off after checking the oil and adding oil if necessary. |

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Malfunction indicator lamp](image) (U.S.A.) | Malfunction indicator lamp  
Indicates a malfunction in:  
• The electronic engine control system;  
• The electronic throttle control system; or  
• The electronic automatic transmission control system. |
| ![Malfunction indicator lamp](image) (Canada) | SRS warning light  
Indicates a malfunction in:  
• The SRS airbag system;  
• The front passenger occupant classification system; or  
• The seat belt pretensioner system. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **ABS** (U.S.A.) | **ABS warning light**  
Indicates a malfunction in:  
• The ABS;  
• The brake assist system. |
| **ABS** (Canada) | **Rear light failure warning light**  
Indicates a malfunction in tail lights. |
| **A/T OIL TEMP** (4WD models) | **Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light**  
Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high. |
| **Auto headlight leveling system** (Vehicles with discharge headlights) | **Automatic headlight leveling system warning light**  
Indicates a malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system. |
Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning light</th>
<th>Warning light/Details</th>
<th>Correction procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1</td>
<td>Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed. The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. The warning light flashes to indicate that one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</td>
<td>Close the indicated doors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low fuel level warning light</td>
<td>Remaining fuel (Approximately 2.9 gal. [11 L, 2.4 Imp.gal.] or less)</td>
<td>Refuel the vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2</td>
<td>Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.</td>
<td>Fasten the seat belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*3</td>
<td>Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.</td>
<td>Fasten the seat belt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning light</td>
<td>Warning light/Details</td>
<td>Correction procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tire pressure warning light</strong></td>
<td>When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.</td>
<td>Adjust the tire inflation pressure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system</td>
<td>Have the system inspected by your Lexus dealer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Low washer fluid warning light</strong></td>
<td>Low level of washer fluid</td>
<td>Fill the tank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Engine oil replacement reminder light</strong></td>
<td>Illuminates for about 3 seconds and then flashes for about 12 seconds: Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed.</td>
<td>Check and the engine oil, and change if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comes on and remains: Indicates that the engine oil should be changed.</td>
<td>Check and change the engine oil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light</strong></td>
<td>Indicating a malfunction in the dynamic laser cruise control system. When the light comes on, the alarm sounds and the warning code will appear on the display.</td>
<td>→P.163</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Open door warning buzzer:**
   A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) or more with any door open.

2. **Driver’s seat belt reminder:**
   The driver’s seat belt reminder sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to the ON or START position, the buzzer sounds for 4 to 8 seconds. If the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

3. **Front passenger’s seat belt reminder:**
   The front passenger’s seat belt reminder sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

- **Key reminder buzzer**
  The buzzer indicates that the key has not been removed (with the engine switch in the ACC or LOCK position and the driver’s door opened).

- **Open moon roof reminder buzzer**
  The buzzer indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the engine switch in the ACC or LOCK position and the driver’s door opened).

- **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**
  First check the following:
  - Is your vehicle low on gas?
    If it is, refuel the vehicle immediately.
  - Is the fuel tank cap loose?
    If it is, tighten it securely.

  The lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.
  If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

Changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)

Make sure to reset the oil change system. (→P. 326)

When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

**If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative**

The tire pressure warning system may become inoperative in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to a different tire setting.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher.
- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular, around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.

**If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently**

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the engine switch is turned to ON position, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.
When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

● Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.

● If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.

● Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.
CAUTION

Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTICE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Precaution when installing a different tire</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

■ Before jacking up the vehicle
  ● Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
  ● Set the parking brake.
  ● Shift the shift lever to P.
  ● Stop the engine.
  ● Turn on the emergency flashers.

■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools
Taking out the jack and tools

**STEP 1**
Pull up the front deck board.

**STEP 2**
Hold the front deck board with the supporting rod.
When closing the board, return the supporting rod to its stored position.

**STEP 3**
1. Unhook
2. Loosen
3. Tighten
Taking out the spare tire

**STEP 1**
Remove the inside spare tire cover.

**STEP 2**
Open the right side auxiliary box.

**STEP 3**
Remove the cover.
To protect the auxiliary box, place a rag between the screwdriver and the auxiliary box, as shown in the illustration.

**STEP 4**
Attach the adapter socket (for removing a spare tire).
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Connect the jack handle and the adapter socket. Turn the jack handle.

The tire will lower completely to the ground.

Pull out the spare tire and stand it up against the bumper.

Remove the holding bracket.
Replacing a flat tire

**STEP 1**

Chock the tires.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flat tire</th>
<th>Wheel chock positions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left-hand side</td>
<td>Behind the rear right-hand side tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right-hand side</td>
<td>Behind the rear left-hand side tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left-hand side</td>
<td>In front of the front right-hand side tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right-hand side</td>
<td>In front of the front left-hand side tire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STEP 2**

Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

**STEP 3**

Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.
When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

STEP 4
Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

STEP 5
Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.
Installing the spare tire

**STEP 1**
Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

**STEP 2**
Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel sheet.

**STEP 3**
Lower the vehicle.

**STEP 4**
Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque: 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)
Stowing the flat tire, jack and all tools

**STEP 1** Install the inside spare tire cover on the outer side of the spare tire cover.

**STEP 2** Put the flat tire in the spare tire cover with the outer side facing up and install the holding bracket.

**STEP 3** Turn the spare tire clamp bolt clockwise with a jack handle and adapter socket until you hear a click.

**STEP 4** Stow all the tools and jack securely.

- After completing the tire change
  The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 339)
### CAUTION

#### Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

#### Replacing a flat tire

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 76 ft•lb (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels. Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
**NOTICE**

- **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**
  
  Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

- **When replacing the tires**
  
  When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

- **To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**
  
  Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

- **When stowing the flat tire**
  
  - Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.
  - Tighten the spare tire clamp bolt to hold the spare wheel carrier by the hook securely.
If the engine will not start, even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 117), consider each of the following points.

- **The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally.**
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  - There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle’s tank.
    Refuel your vehicle.
  - The engine may be flooded.
    Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 117)
  - There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 70)

- **The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.**
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  - The battery may be discharged. (→P. 421)
  - The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

- **The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.**
  One of the following may be the cause of the problem.
  - One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
  - The battery may be discharged. (→P. 421)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.
If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake.

**STEP 2** Turn the engine switch to the ON position.

**STEP 3** Depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 4** Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.

**STEP 5** Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.
New genuine keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. Bring a master key and the key number stamped on the key number plate.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle’s battery is discharged.
You can call your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Lexus Customer Service Assistance.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

**STEP 1** Remove the engine compartment cover. (→ P. 325)

**STEP 2**

1. If required, remove all vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
2. Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
3. Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4. Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
5. Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

**STEP 3** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

**STEP 4** Maintain the engine speed on the second vehicle and start the vehicle’s engine.
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### Avoiding a discharged battery
- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

### When the battery is removed or discharged
The power windows and power back door must be initialized. (→P. 457)

### CAUTION

#### Avoiding battery fires or explosions
Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.
- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.
### CAUTION

**Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

### NOTICE

**To prevent damaging the vehicle**

Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle, because the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.

**When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.
If your engine overheats:

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic air conditioning system.

**STEP 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.
   - If you see steam:
     - Stop the engine and carefully lift the hood.
   - If you do not see steam:
     - Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

**STEP 3** Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.
   - If the fan is operating:
     - Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.
   - If the fan is not operating:
     - Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

**STEP 4** After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.
When trouble arises

425

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Add engine coolant if required.
Water can be used in an emergency measure if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 432)

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating
If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.
● The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
● Steam is coming from under the hood.

⚠️ CAUTION
■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle
● Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
● Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

⚠️ NOTICE
■ When adding engine coolant
Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant. When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the shift lever in P.
STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
STEP 4 Restart the engine.
STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.
   Turn off TRAC and/or VSC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→ P.170)

⚠️ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle
   If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever
   Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

⚠️ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components
   ● Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
   ● If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.
6-1. Specifications................. 428
  Maintenance data
  (fuel, oil level, etc.)............ 428
  Fuel information.................. 439
  Tire information.................. 442

6-2. Customization................. 453
  Customizable features.......... 453

6-3. Initialization.................. 457
  Items to initialize............... 457
### Dimensions and weight

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>2WD models</th>
<th>4WD models*5</th>
<th>4WD models*6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overall length</td>
<td>186.2 in.</td>
<td>65.7 in. (1670 mm)</td>
<td>66.1 in (1680 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>72.6 in. (1845 mm)</td>
<td>67.3 in. (1710 mm)</td>
<td>67.7 in. (1720 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>67.9 in (1725 mm)</td>
<td>68.3 in (1735 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width</td>
<td>106.9 in. (2715 mm)</td>
<td>62.2 in. (1580 mm)</td>
<td>62.0 in. (1575 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>61.6 in. (1565 mm)</td>
<td>61.4 in. (1560 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread</td>
<td></td>
<td>62.0 in. (1575 mm)</td>
<td>61.2 in. (1555 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>62.0 in. (1575 mm)</td>
<td>61.4 in. (1560 mm)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle capacity weight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Occupants + luggage)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>925 lb. (420 kg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing capacity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Trailer weight + cargo)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without towing package</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000 lb. (907 kg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With towing package</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3500 lb. (1588 kg)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Unladen vehicle
*2: Vehicle without roof rails
*3: Vehicle with roof rails
*4: Vehicle with roof rails and cross rails
*5: Vehicle with electronically modulated air suspension
*6: Vehicle without electronically modulated air suspension
Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and under the front passenger’s seat (on some models).

This number is also on the Certification Label.
■ Engine number
The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Fuel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model</td>
<td>2GR-FE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bore and stroke</td>
<td>3.70 × 3.27 in. (94 × 83 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displacement</td>
<td>210.1 cu.in. (3456 cm³)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive belt tension</td>
<td>Automatic adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Unleaded gasoline only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octane rating</td>
<td>91 (Research octane number 96) or higher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank capacity</td>
<td>19.2 gal. (72.5 L, 15.9 lmp.gal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Lubrication system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil capacity (drain and refill)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With filter</td>
<td>6.4 qt. (6.1 L, 5.4 lmp.qt.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without filter</td>
<td>6.0 qt. (5.7 L, 5.0 lmp.qt.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oil grade**
- ILSAC multi-grade engine oil

**Recommended oil viscosity**
- Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the above grade and viscosity.

5W-30 is an oil that provides optimal levels of fuel efficiency.

**Oil viscosity**

- The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load condition.
### Cooling system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capacity</strong></td>
<td>8.9 qt. (8.4L, 7.4 Imp.qt.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Coolant type**    | Use either of the following. • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”  
                       • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology  
                       Do not use plain water alone. |

### Ignition system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spark plug</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Make</strong></td>
<td>DENSO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gap</strong></td>
<td>FK20HR11 0.043 in. (1.1 mm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ **NOTICE**

- **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**
  
  Use only Lexus genuine iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.
## Electrical system

| Battery | 12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged  
12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged  
11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged  
(Voltage checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off) |
| Charging rates | 5 A max. |

## Rear differential (4WD models)

| Oil capacity | 1.0 qt. (0.9 L, 0.8 Imp.qt.) |
| Oil type and viscosity | Hypoid gear oil API GL-5  
Above 0°F (-18°C): SAE90  
Below 0°F (-18°C): SAE80W or SAE80W-90 |
### Automatic Transaxle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid capacity</th>
<th>3.7 qt. (3.5 L, 3.1 lmp.qt.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drain and refill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid type</td>
<td>Toyota Genuine ATF WS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTICE**

Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

### Transfer (4WD models)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oil capacity</th>
<th>1.0 qt. (0.9 L, 0.8 lmp.qt.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oil type</td>
<td>Hypoid gear oil API GL-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended oil viscosity</td>
<td>Above 0°F (-18°C): SAE90 Below 0°F (-18°C): SAE80W or SAE80W-90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Brakes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pedal clearance *1</td>
<td>3.1 in. (80 mm) Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedal free play</td>
<td>0.079 — 0.118 in. (2 — 3 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake pad wear limit</td>
<td>0.04 in. (1.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake lining wear limit</td>
<td>0.04 in. (1.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake pedal travel *2</td>
<td>5 — 7 clicks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid type</td>
<td>SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running.

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 67.4 lbf (300 N, 30.6 kgf).
## 6-1. Specifications

### Steering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Free play</td>
<td>Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid type</td>
<td>Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tires and wheels

#### Type A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tire size</td>
<td>225/65R17 101S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>Driving under normal conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spare: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Add 1.5 psi (10 kPa, 0.1 kgf/cm² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel size</td>
<td>17 × 6 1/2 J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel nut torque</td>
<td>76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Type B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tire size</strong></td>
<td>P235/55R18 99V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)** | Driving under normal conditions  
  Front: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)  
  Rear: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar)  
  Spare: 30 psi (210 kPa, 2.1 kgf/cm² or bar) |
| **Wheel size**                         | 18 × 7 JJ, 18 × 7 J |
| **Wheel nut torque**                   | 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) |
### Light bulbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light Bulbs</th>
<th>Bulb No.</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exterior</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlights (low beam)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge bulbs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halogen bulbs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlights (high beam)</td>
<td>9005</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking lights</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog lights</td>
<td>9006</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front side marker lights</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear turn signal lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail lights</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licence plate lights</td>
<td>168</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-up lights</td>
<td>921</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear side marker lights</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interior</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage compartment lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door courtesy lights</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A: D2S discharge bulbs
B: H11 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
D: HB3 halogen bulbs
E: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
F: HB4 halogen bulbs
G: Double end bulbs
H: Single end bulbs
Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline. Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline
  To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If premium gasoline is not available
  If 91 rating gasoline cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

■ If your engine knocks
  ● Consult your Lexus dealer.
  ● You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality
  In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.
Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.
NOTICE

■ Notice on gasoline quality
  ● Do not use leaded gasoline.
    Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle’s three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
  ● Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
    Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
  ● Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

■ Fuel-related poor driveability
  If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ When refueling with gasohol
  Take care not to spill gasohol.
  It can damage your vehicle’s paint.
6-1. Specifications
Tire information

**Typical tire symbols**

1. Tire size  
   (→P. 444)
2. DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)  
   (→P. 443)
3. Location of treadwear indicators  
   (→P. 445)
4. Tire ply composition and materials
   Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.
5. Radial tires or bias-ply tires
   A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.
6. TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE
   A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.
7. Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure  
   (→P. 447)
8. Maximum cold tire inflation pressure  
   (→P. 447)
   This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.
9. Uniform tire quality grading
   For details, see “Uniform tire quality grading” that follows.
Summer tire or all season tire

An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

**Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)**

1. DOT symbol*
2. Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3. Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4. Tire size code
5. Manufacturer’s optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
6. Manufacturing week
7. Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.
## Tire size

### Typical tire size information

The illustration indicates typical tire size.

1. **Tire use**  
   (P = Passenger car,  
    T = Temporary use)

2. **Section width** (millimeters)

3. **Aspect ratio**  
   (tire height to section width)

4. **Tire construction code**  
   (R = Radial, D = Diagonal)

5. **Wheel diameter** (inches)

6. **Load index** (2 or 3 digits)

7. **Speed symbol**  
   (alphabet with one letter)

### Tire dimensions

1. **Section width**

2. **Tire height**

3. **Wheel diameter**
**Tire section names**

1. Bead
2. Sidewall
3. Shoulder
4. Tread
5. Belt
6. Inner liner
7. Reinforcing rubber
8. Carcass
9. Rim lines
10. Bead wires
11. Chafer

---

**Uniform tire quality grading**

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

**DOT quality grades**

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A
■ **Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

■ **Traction AA, A, B, C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Warning:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

■ **Temperature A, B, C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.
Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

### Glossary of tire terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum inflation pressure</td>
<td>The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended inflation pressure</td>
<td>Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory weight</td>
<td>The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curb weight</td>
<td>The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum loaded vehicle weight</td>
<td>The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal occupant weight</td>
<td>150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire related term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant distribution</td>
<td>Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production options weight</td>
<td>The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty 12-volt battery, and special trim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim</td>
<td>A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)</td>
<td>Nominal diameter of the bead seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim size designation</td>
<td>Rim diameter and width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim type designation</td>
<td>The industry manufacturer’s designation for a rim by style or code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim width</td>
<td>Nominal distance between rim flanges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)</td>
<td>The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle’s designated seating capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle maximum load on the tire</td>
<td>The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle normal load on the tire</td>
<td>The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather side</td>
<td>The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire related term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bead</td>
<td>The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bead separation</td>
<td>A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bias ply tire</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcass</td>
<td>The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chunking</td>
<td>The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord</td>
<td>The strands forming the plies in the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cord separation</td>
<td>The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cracking</td>
<td>Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra load tire</td>
<td>A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove</td>
<td>The space between two adjacent tread ribs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innerliner</td>
<td>The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innerliner separation</td>
<td>The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire related term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Intended outboard sidewall             | (a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or  
(b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle |
| Light truck (LT) tire                  | A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles |
| Load rating                            | The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure |
| Maximum load rating                    | The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire |
| Maximum permissible inflation pressure | The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated        |
| Measuring rim                          | The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements    |
| Open splice                            | Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material |
| Outer diameter                         | The overall diameter of an inflated new tire                             |
| Overall width                          | The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs |
| Passenger car tire                     | A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less. |
| Ply                                    | A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords                                 |
## Tire related term

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ply separation</td>
<td>A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumatic tire</td>
<td>A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial ply tire</td>
<td>A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced tire</td>
<td>A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section width</td>
<td>The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidewall</td>
<td>That portion of a tire between the tread and bead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidewall separation</td>
<td>The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow tire</td>
<td>A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM-E 1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Signal Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (▲) on at least one sidewall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test rim</td>
<td>The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 6-1. Specifications

### Tire related term

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire related term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tread</td>
<td>That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread rib</td>
<td>A tread section running circumferentially around a tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread separation</td>
<td>Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treadwear indicators (TWI)</td>
<td>The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel-holding fixture</td>
<td>The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants</th>
<th>Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants</th>
<th>Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 through 4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 in front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 through 10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2 in front, 1 in second seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 through 15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 through 20</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control (→P. 24)</td>
<td>Unlocking operation</td>
<td>Driver’s door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps</td>
<td>All doors unlocked in one step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic door lock function to be activated if door is not opened after being unlocked</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked</td>
<td>60 seconds</td>
<td>30 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>120 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation signal (Emergency flashers)</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation signal (Buzzer)</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6-2. Customization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control (→P. 24)</td>
<td>Buzzer sounds when pushing LOCK with any door not closed</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Power back door operation</td>
<td>Push and hold</td>
<td>Push twice*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>One short push*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Panic function</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power back door (→P. 32)</td>
<td>Switch operation</td>
<td>Push and hold</td>
<td>One short push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless remote control linked operation</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation signal volume</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation when door locks</td>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>Impossible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assistance of opening with door opener</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sensitivity of jam protection function</td>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>Level 2 to 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: It is possible to select them only when the power back door operation with the open/close switch is made impossible when the door is locked.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Door lock (→P. 27)</td>
<td>Unlocking using a key</td>
<td>Driver’s door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps</td>
<td>All doors unlocked in one step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed-detecting automatic door lock function</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opening driver's door unlocks all doors</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors.</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifting gears to position other than P locks all doors.</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power windows (→P. 60)</td>
<td>Linked door lock/unlock operation</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control linked operation</td>
<td>ON (open only)</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moon roof (standard type) (→P. 63)</td>
<td>Linked door lock/unlock operation</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control linked operation</td>
<td>ON (open only)</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic light control system (→P. 137, 140)</td>
<td>Light sensor sensitivity</td>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Level 1 to 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed</td>
<td>30 seconds</td>
<td>0 second, 60 seconds, 90 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 6-2. Customization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Default setting</th>
<th>Customized setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Windshield wipers and washer (→P.145, 149)</td>
<td>Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illumination (→P.268)</td>
<td>Time elapsed before lights turn off</td>
<td>15 seconds</td>
<td>7.5 seconds (30 seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation when the doors are opened</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation when the doors are unlocked</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operation after the engine is off</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel (→P.54)</td>
<td>Automatic tilt-away steering column</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>When to initialize</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Power window                     | • After reconnecting or changing the battery  
                                 | • After changing a fuse                                                           | P. 60     |
| Power back door                  | • After reconnecting or changing the battery  
                                 | • After changing a fuse                                                           | P. 32     |
| Moon roof (Multi-panel type only)| • After reconnecting or changing the battery  
                                 | • After changing a fuse                                                           | P. 63     |
| Engine oil maintenance data      | After changing engine oil                                                         | P. 326   |
| Tire pressure warning system     | • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.  
                                 | • When changing the tire size.                                                     | P. 338    |
6-3. Initialization
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.
For details of equipment related to the navigation system and touch screen, such as the air conditioning and audio systems, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ABBREVIATIONS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A/C</td>
<td>Air Conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>Anti-Lock Brake System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>Accessory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFS</td>
<td>Adaptive Front-lighting System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALR</td>
<td>Automatic Locking Retractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRS</td>
<td>Child Restraint System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECU</td>
<td>Electronic Control Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDR</td>
<td>Event data recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELR</td>
<td>Emergency Locking Retractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAWR</td>
<td>Gross Axle Weight Ratings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/M</td>
<td>Emission inspection and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFO</td>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED</td>
<td>Light Emitting Diode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMT</td>
<td>Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M + S</td>
<td>Mud and Snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTBE</td>
<td>Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBD</td>
<td>On Board Diagnostics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS</td>
<td>Supplemental Restraint System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIN</td>
<td>Tire Identification Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS</td>
<td>Tire Pressure Warning System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAC</td>
<td>Traction Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIN</td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSC</td>
<td>Vehicle Stability Control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Alphabetical index

A

A/C............................................................ 206
ABS..............................................................169
Adaptive front lighting
   system..................................................138, 141
AFS ..................................................138, 141
Air conditioning filter ....................... 352
Air conditioning system
   Air conditioning filter ....................... 352
   Automatic air conditioning system ................. 206
Airbags
   Airbag operating conditions ............ 80
   Airbag precautions for your child ................. 85
   Airbag warning light ......................... 398
   Curtain shield airbag operating conditions ........ 81
   Curtain shield airbag precautions ............. 85
   Front passenger occupant classification system .......... 90
   General airbag precautions ............... 85
   Locations of airbags ............................ 78
   Modification and disposal of airbags ............ 89
   Proper driving posture ...................... 76, 85
   Side airbag operating conditions ..... 81
   Side airbag precautions ...................... 85
   SRS airbags ..................................... 78
Alarm .......................................................... 72
Antenna.................................................... 219
Anti-lock brake system.......................... 169
Armrest .................................................. 290
Audio system
   Antenna ............................................. 219
   CD player/changer ......................... 222
   MP3/WMA disc ................................. 228
   Optimal use .................................. 236
   Radio ............................................. 215
   Steering wheel audio switch ............. 239
Automatic air conditioning system .......... 206
Automatic headlight leveling system ...... 139, 142
Automatic light control system ............ 137, 140
Automatic transmission
   Automatic transmission ..................... 120
   If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ........ 419
   S mode ........................................... 122
Back door
   Back door ........................................ 32
   Wireless remote control ................. 24
Back-up lights
   Replacing light bulbs ....................... 372
   Wattage ......................................... 438
Battery
   Checking ........................................ 334
   If the vehicle has discharged battery ........ 421
   Preparing and checking before winter ....... 188
Brake
   Fluid ............................................. 331
   Parking brake ................................ 127
   Brake assist ................................. 169
Break-in tips ........................................ 111
Brightness control
   Multi-display light control .............. 284
Care
Exterior ...................................................306
Interior .....................................................309
Seat belts .................................................310
Cargo capacity .......................................184
Cargo hooks ..........................................292
CD changer
CD .............................................................222
MP3 disc ................................................228
WMA disc .............................................228
CD player ................................................222
Chains ........................................................190
Child restraint system
Booster seats, definition ....................95
Booster seats, installation ................. 99
Convertible seats, definition ...........95
Convertible seats, installation......... 99
Front passenger occupant classification system .........................90
Infant seats, definition ......................95
Infant seats, installation .....................99
Installing CRS with lower anchorages .....................................102
Installing CRS with seatbelts ..........99
Installing CRS with top straps ...... 104
Child safety
Airbag precautions ..............................85
Battery precautions ........................336, 423
Child restraint system .........................95
Child-protectors ......................................28
How your child should wear the seatbelt ........................................50
Installing child restraints ......................98
Moon roof precautions .........................66
Power window lock switch .................60
Power window precautions ..................62
Removed rear seat entertainment system controller battery ..........358
Removed wireless remote control battery precautions .................356
Seat belt comfort guide .........................47
Seat belt extender precautions ............52
Seat belt precautions .........................51
Seat heater precautions .......................288
Child-protectors ......................................28
Cleaning
Exterior ...................................................306
Interior .....................................................309
Seat belts .................................................310
Clock ........................................................282
Compass ..................................................300
Condenser ................................................331
Console box ............................................274
Cooling system
Engine overheating ..................................424
Cruise control
Cruise control .......................................156
Dynamic laser cruise control .........159
Cup holder ..............................................277
Curtain shield airbags .........................78
Customizable features .........................453
Daytime running light system ...138, 141
Defogger
Rear window ...........................................212
Side mirror ..............................................212
Dimension ..............................................428
Dinghy towing ........................................203
Display
Dynamic laser cruise control .........159
Trip information ....................................134
Do-it-yourself maintenance .................318
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alphabetical index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Door courtesy lights</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door courtesy lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Door lock</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless remote control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Door pockets</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Doors</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power back door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driver’s seat belt reminder light</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Break-in tips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correct posture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-road precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter driving tips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driving position memory</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DVD player</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio CD/CD text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD video</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 discs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video CD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Electronically modulated air suspension</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emergency, in case of</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the back door opener is in operative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparing and checking before winter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil maintenance data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event data recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor mat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot well lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving position memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flattening seatbacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front side marker light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel gauge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel pump shut off system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas station information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refueling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel pump shut off system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garage door opener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas station information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head restraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight cleaner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge headlights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heaters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat heaters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronically modulated air suspension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Hooks
- Cargo hook ..........................................292
- Shopping bag hook ..........................292

### I/M test ....................................................... 317

### Identification
- Engine ..................................................... 429
- Vehicle.................................................... 429

### Ignition
- Keys............................................................. 22
- Ignition switch ..................................................117
- Ignition switch light ...........................268

### Illuminated entry system ..........269

### Indicator lights .........................................130

### Initialization
- Items to initialize ........................................457
- Inside door handle lights ................... 268
- Inside rear view mirror.......................... 55

### Interior lights
- Interior lights ........................................268
- Switch..........................................................271
- Wattage.........................................................438

### Jack
- Positioning the jack .........................322
- Replacing the wheel ..........................408
- Jack handle ............................................. 408

### Keyless entry........................................24
- Keys ............................................................. 22
- Ignition switch...........................................117
- Key number ............................................. 22
- Keyless entry ........................................... 24
- Keys ............................................................. 22
- Wireless remote control key ............. 24

### Laser cruise control..........159

### Licence plate lights
- Replacing light bulbs .........................372
- Wattage.........................................................438

### Light bulbs
- Replacing ...............................................372
- Wattage.........................................................438

### Lights
- Door courtesy lights ......................... 268
- Fog light switch .......................... 143, 144
- Headlights switch .......................... 137, 140
- Engine switch light ......................... 268
- Inside door handle lights ..................268
- Interior light switch ..............................268
- Luggage compartment light ...........34
- Meter ring light ............................................ 268
- Overhead courtesy light .................... 268
- Personal light switch ......................... 272
- Replacing light bulbs ......................... 372
- Scuff lighting ............................................... 268
- Turn signal lever .......................... 125, 126
- Vanity lights ........................................... 281
- Wattage.........................................................438

### Load capacity .......................................... 187

### Lock steering column ...............118

### Luggage compartment lights
- Switch ..........................................................34
- Wattage.........................................................438

### Luggage cover .......................................... 292
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>Maintenance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do-it-yourself maintenance</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General maintenance</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance data</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance requirements</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meter</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel light control</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meters</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meter ring light</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrors</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside rear view mirror</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side mirror heater</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side mirrors</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirrors</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moon roof</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 disc</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-display</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness control</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odometer</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-road precautions</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opener</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back door</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler door</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hood</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside rear view mirrors</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting and folding</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving position memory</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside temperature display</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overhead console</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overhead courtesy lights</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overheating, Engine</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking lights</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>137, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal lights</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal lights</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power outlet</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power windows</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiator</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear audio system</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seat entertainment system</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio CD/CD text</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVD video</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial setting</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 discs</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seat entertainment system</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing controller battery</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video CD</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seats</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjustment</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding down</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear side marker lights</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear turn signal lights</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rear window defogger......................... 212
Rear window wiper .........................153, 154
Replacing
  Fuses...........................................359
  Light bulbs.................................372
  Rear seat entertainment system  
    controller battery.....................357
  Tires...........................................408
  Wireless remote control 
    battery......................................355
Reporting safety defects for U.S.  
  owners.........................................460
Roof luggage carrier ....................... 58
RSE
  Replacing controller battery........357
  RSE..........................................241
Scuff lighting................................. 268
Seat belts
  Adjusting the seat belt ............47
  Automatic Locking Retractor ......49
  Child restraint system 
    installation.............................98
  Cleaning and maintaining the seat 
    belts.......................................310
  Emergency Locking Retractor......49
  How to wear your seat belt............46
  How your child should wear the seat 
    belt.......................................50
  Pregnant women, proper seat belt 
    use.........................................49
  Reminder light............................400
  Seat belt extenders.....................50
  Seat belt pretensioners..............48
Seat heaters.................................. 288
Seating capacity............................ 187
Seats
  Adjustment.................................37, 40
  Adjustment precautions...............39, 42
  Child seats/child restraint system 
    installation.............................98
  Cleaning.....................................309
  Driver’s seat position memory......43
  Flattening seatbacks....................38
  Head restraint............................45
  Properly sitting in the seat.........76
  Seat heaters................................288
Service reminder indicators ............130
Shift lever
  Automatic transmission..............120
  If the shift lever cannot be shifted 
    from P.................................419
Shopping bag hooks.......................292
Side airbags.................................. 78
Side marker lights
  Replacing light bulbs.................372
  Switch.....................................137, 140
  Wattage....................................438
Side mirror
  Adjusting and folding................56
  Mirror position memory..............43
Spare tire
  Inflation pressure......................346
  Spare tire................................408
Spark plug......................................432
Specifications.............................428
Speech command switch*
Spedometer
  Speedometer...............................128

*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
Alphabetical index

Steering
  Column lock release .................. 118
  Fluid .................................. 333
Steering wheel
  Audio switches ................... 239
  Manual adjustment .................. 53
  Power adjustment ................... 54
  Steering wheel position
    memory .................................... 43
Storage feature .................. 273
Stuck
  If your vehicle becomes stuck .... 426
Sun visors ...................... 280
Sunshade
  Roof ................................... 65
Switch
  ECT SNOW switch .................. 122
  Engine switch ..................... 117
  Fog light switch .................. 143, 144
  Ignition switch .................... 117
  Light switches .................... 137, 140
  Power back door switch .......... 32
  Power door lock switch ........... 27
  Power window switch ............ 60
  Rear window wiper and washer
    switch .............................. 153, 154
  Window lock switch ............ 60
  Wipers and washer
    switch ...................... 145, 149
Tachometer
  Tachometer .................... 128
Tail lights
  Replacing light bulbs ............ 372
  Switch .................... 137, 140
  Wattage .......................... 438
Talk switch*
Telephone switch*
Theft deterrent system
  Alarm ............................ 72
  Engine immobilizer system ....... 70
Theft prevention labels .......... 75
Tire inflation pressure ........ 346
Tire information
  Glossary ...................... 447
  Size ................................ 444
  Tire identification number .... 443
  Uniform tire quality grading ... 445
Tires
  Chains ............................ 188
  Checking ...................... 338
  If you have a flat tire ............ 408
  Inflation pressure ............ 346
  Inflation pressure sensor ....... 339
  Information .................. 442
  Replacing .................... 408
  Rotating tires ................ 338
  Size ............................... 436
  Snow tires ..................... 188
  Spare tire .................... 408
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total load capacity</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinghy towing</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency towing</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAC</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traction control</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip information display</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip meter</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn signal lights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing light bulbs</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>125, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valet key</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity lights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity lights</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wattage</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirrors</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle identification number</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle stability control</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video mode</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSC</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning buzzers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key reminder</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open door</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open moon roof reminder</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt reminder</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning lights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-lock brake system</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic headlight leveling system</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake assist system</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging system</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic engine control system</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil replacement reminder light</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low engine oil pressure</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low fuel level</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low tire pressure warning light</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low washer fluid</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open door</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretensioners</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear light failure</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt reminder light</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS airbags</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparing and checking before winter</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch</td>
<td>145, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing and waxing</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo capacity</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load limits</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window glasses</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”. 471
Window lock switch ...............................60

Windows
  Power windows...............................60
  Rear window defogger .................... 212
  Washer.........................................145, 149

Windshield wipers....................... 145, 149

Wireless remote control key
  Replacing the battery ......................355
  Wireless remote control key............24

WMA disc ................................................228
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Page Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A tire punctures</td>
<td>P. 408</td>
<td>If you have a flat tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The engine does not start</td>
<td>P. 418</td>
<td>If the engine will not start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P. 70</td>
<td>Engine immobilizer system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P. 421</td>
<td>If the vehicle battery is discharged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The shift lever cannot be moved out</td>
<td>P. 419</td>
<td>If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone</td>
<td>P. 424</td>
<td>If your vehicle overheats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam can be seen coming from under the hood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The key is lost</td>
<td>P. 420</td>
<td>If you lose your keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The battery runs out</td>
<td>P. 421</td>
<td>If the vehicle battery is discharged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The doors cannot be locked</td>
<td>P. 27</td>
<td>Side doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P. 32</td>
<td>Back door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The horn begins to sound</td>
<td>P. 72</td>
<td>Alarm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand</td>
<td>P. 426</td>
<td>If the vehicle becomes stuck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What to do if...

The warning light or indicator light comes on

If the warning light turns on

Warning lights

- Brake system warning light
  - Or
  - Malfunction indicator lamp
    - Or

- “ABS” warning light
  - Or
  - Driver’s seat belt reminder light

- Low fuel level warning light
  - Or
  - Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light

- SRS warning light
  - Or
  - Rear light failure warning light

- Open door warning light
  - Or
  - Low engine oil pressure warning light

- Charging system warning light
  - Or
  - Tire pressure warning light

- Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light
  - Or
  - Automatic headlight leveling system warning light

- Low washer fluid warning light

P. 397
P. 398
P. 400
P. 398
P. 400
P. 398
P. 400
**GAS STATION INFORMATION**

- **Auxiliary catch lever**: P. 321
- **Fuel filler door**: P. 67
- **Back door opener**: P. 32
- **Hood lock release lever**: P. 321
- **Fuel filler door opener**: P. 67
- **Tire inflation pressure**: P. 436

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank capacity</td>
<td>19.2 gal. (72.5L, 15.9 Imp.gal.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel type</td>
<td>Unleaded gasoline only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold tire inflation pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P. 436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill)</td>
<td>q. (L, Imp.q.t.) 6.4 (6.1, 5.4) Without filter 6.0 (5.7, 5.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil type</td>
<td>Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recommended oil viscosity: SAE-5W-30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P. 68, 430